

# Dreamcast SH4 Cross Assembler

# Hitachi Microcomputer Support Software

SH Series Cross Assembler



#### **Notice**

When using this document, keep the following in mind:

- 1. This document may, wholly or partially, be subject to change without notice.
- 2. All rights are reserved: No one is permitted to reproduce or duplicate, in any form, the whole or part of this document without Hitachi's permission.
- 3. Hitachi will not be held responsible for any damage to the user that may result from accidents or any other reasons during operation of the user's unit according to this document.
- 4. Circuitry and other examples described herein are meant merely to indicate the characteristics and performance of Hitachi's semiconductor products. Hitachi assumes no responsibility for any intellectual property claims or other problems that may result from applications based on the examples described herein.
- 5. No license is granted by implication or otherwise under any patents or other rights of any third party or Hitachi, Ltd.
- 6. MEDICAL APPLICATIONS: Hitachi's products are not authorized for use in MEDICAL APPLICATIONS without the written consent of the appropriate officer of Hitachi's sales company. Such use includes, but is not limited to, use in life support systems. Buyers of Hitachi's products are requested to notify the relevant Hitachi sales offices when planning to use the products in MEDICAL APPLICATIONS.

## Contents

Preface	1
Overview	3
Section 1 Overview	5
Section 2 Relationships between the Software	
Development Support Tools	7
Programmer's Guide	9
Section 1 Program Elements	10
1.1 Source Statements	
1.1.1 Source Statement Structure	
1.1.2 Coding of Source Statements	
1.1.3 Coding of Source Statements across Multiple Lines	
1.2 Reserved Words	
1.3 Symbols	
1.3.1 Functions of Symbols	
1.3.2 Coding of Symbols	
1.4 Constants	
1.4.1 Integer Constants	20
1.4.2 Character Constants	21
1.4.3 Floating-Point Numbers	22
1.4.4 Fixed-Point Numbers	25
1.5 Location Counter	27
1.6 Expressions	29
1.6.1 Elements of Expression	29
1.6.2 Operation Priority	31
1.6.3 Detailed Description on Operation	34
1.6.4 Notes on Expressions	36
1.7 Character Strings.	37
1.8 Local Label	38
1.8.1 Local Label Functions	38
1.8.2 Description Method of Local Label	
1.8.3 Scope of Local Labels	39
Castian 2 Dania Programming Vincondada	40
Section 2 Basic Programming Knowledge	
Z. I. OCCHOIIS	

2.1.1 Section Types by Usage       40         2.1.2 Absolute Address Sections and Relative Address Sections       44         2.2 Absolute and Relative Values       46         2.2.1 Absolute Values       46         2.2.2 Relative Values       46         2.3 Symbol Definition and Reference       47         2.3.1 Symbol Definition       47         2.3.2 Symbol Reference       48         2.4 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.1 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.2 Declaration of Export Symbols and Import Symbols       51         Section 3 Executable Instructions       53         3.1 Overview of Executable Instructions       53         3.2 Notes on Executable Instructions       53         3.2.1 Notes on the Operation Size       59         3.2.2 Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions       70         3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations       72         Section 4 Assembler Directives       77         4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives       77         4.2 Assembler Directive Reference       79         4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directives       81         4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       90	2.1.1 Section Types by Heave	40
2.2 Absolute and Relative Values       46         2.2.1 Absolute Values       46         2.2.2 Relative Values       46         2.3 Symbol Definition and Reference       47         2.3.1 Symbol Definition       47         2.3.2 Symbol Reference       48         2.4 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.1 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.2 Declaration of Export Symbols and Import Symbols       51         Section 3 Executable Instructions       53         3.1 Overview of Executable Instructions       53         3.2 Notes on Executable Instructions       59         3.2.1 Notes on the Operation Size       59         3.2.2 Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions       70         3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations       72         Section 4 Assembler Directives       77         4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives       77         4.2 Assembler Directive Reference       79         4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directives       81         4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       84         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       128		
2.2.1 Absolute Values.       46         2.2.2 Relative Values.       46         2.3 Symbol Definition and Reference       47         2.3.1 Symbol Definition       47         2.3.2 Symbol Reference.       48         2.4 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.1 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.2 Declaration of Export Symbols and Import Symbols.       51         Section 3 Executable Instructions.       53         3.1 Overview of Executable Instructions.       53         3.2 Notes on Executable Instructions.       59         3.2.1 Notes on the Operation Size.       59         3.2.2 Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions       70         3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations.       72         Section 4 Assembler Directives.       77         4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives.       77         4.2 Assembler Directive Reference.       79         4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directives.       81         4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives.       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives.       90         4.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives.       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives.       184         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives. <t< td=""><td></td><td></td></t<>		
2.2.2 Relative Values       46         2.3 Symbol Definition and Reference       47         2.3.1 Symbol Definition       47         2.3.2 Symbol Reference       48         2.4 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.1 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.2 Declaration of Export Symbols and Import Symbols       51         Section 3 Executable Instructions       53         3.1 Overview of Executable Instructions       53         3.2 Notes on Executable Instructions       59         3.2.1 Notes on the Operation Size       59         3.2.2 Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions       70         3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations       72         Section 4 Assembler Directives       77         4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives       77         4.2 Assembler Directive Reference       79         4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directive       79         4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       90         4.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       128         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives       135         4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives		
2.3 Symbol Definition and Reference       47         2.3.1 Symbol Definition       47         2.3.2 Symbol Reference       48         2.4 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.1 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.2 Declaration of Export Symbols and Import Symbols       51         Section 3 Executable Instructions       53         3.1 Overview of Executable Instructions       53         3.2 Notes on Executable Instructions       59         3.2.1 Notes on the Operation Size       59         3.2.2 Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions       70         3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations       72         Section 4 Assembler Directives       77         4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives       77         4.2 Assembler Directive Reference       79         4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directive       79         4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       90         4.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       128         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives       128         4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives       135         4.2.8 Other Assembler Directiv		
2.3.1 Symbol Definition       47         2.3.2 Symbol Reference       48         2.4 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.1 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.2 Declaration of Export Symbols and Import Symbols       51         Section 3 Executable Instructions       53         3.1 Overview of Executable Instructions       53         3.2 Notes on Executable Instructions       59         3.2.1 Notes on the Operation Size       59         3.2.2 Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions       70         3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations       72         Section 4 Assembler Directives       77         4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives       77         4.2 Assembler Directive Reference       79         4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directive       79         4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       98         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives       128         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives       135         4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives       160         Section 5 File Inclusion Function		
2.3.2 Symbol Reference       48         2.4 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.1 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.2 Declaration of Export Symbols and Import Symbols       51         Section 3 Executable Instructions       53         3.1 Overview of Executable Instructions       53         3.2 Notes on Executable Instructions       59         3.2.1 Notes on the Operation Size       59         3.2.2 Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions       70         3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations       72         Section 4 Assembler Directives       77         4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives       77         4.2 Assembler Directive Reference       79         4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directive       79         4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       128         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives       128         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives       135         4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives       160         Section 5 File Inc	·	
2.4 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.1 Separate Assembly       50         2.4.2 Declaration of Export Symbols and Import Symbols       51         Section 3 Executable Instructions       53         3.1 Overview of Executable Instructions       53         3.2 Notes on Executable Instructions       59         3.2.1 Notes on the Operation Size       59         3.2.2 Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions       70         3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations       72         Section 4 Assembler Directives       77         4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives       77         4.2 Assembler Directive Reference       79         4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directive       79         4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       90         4.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       128         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives       128         4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives       135         4.2.8 Other Assembler Directives       160         Section 5 File Inclusion Function       171         6.1 Overview of the Conditional Assembly Function       171	·	
2.4.1 Separate Assembly	·	
2.4.2 Declaration of Export Symbols and Import Symbols       51         Section 3 Executable Instructions       53         3.1 Overview of Executable Instructions       53         3.2 Notes on Executable Instructions       59         3.2.1 Notes on the Operation Size       59         3.2.2 Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions       70         3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations       72         Section 4 Assembler Directives       77         4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives       77         4.2 Assembler Directive Reference       79         4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directive       79         4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       90         4.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       128         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives       135         4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives       135         4.2.8 Other Assembler Directives       160         Section 5 File Inclusion Function       167         Section 6 Conditional Assembly Function       171         6.1.2 Replacement Symbols       172         6.1.3 Conditional Assembly Directives       173		
Section 3 Executable Instructions         53           3.1 Overview of Executable Instructions         53           3.2 Notes on Executable Instructions         59           3.2.1 Notes on the Operation Size         59           3.2.2 Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions         70           3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations         72           Section 4 Assembler Directives         77           4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives         77           4.2 Assembler Directive Reference         79           4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directive         79           4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives         81           4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives         90           4.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives         98           4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives         128           4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives         128           4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives         135           4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives         145           4.2.8 Other Assembler Directives         160           Section 5 File Inclusion Function         171           6.1.1 Preprocessor variables         171           6.1.2 Replacement Symbols         172           6.1.3 Conditional A		
3.1 Overview of Executable Instructions       53         3.2 Notes on Executable Instructions       59         3.2.1 Notes on the Operation Size       59         3.2.2 Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions       70         3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations       72         Section 4 Assembler Directives       77         4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives       77         4.2 Assembler Directive Reference       79         4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directive       79         4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       90         4.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       128         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives       135         4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives       145         4.2.8 Other Assembler Directives       160         Section 5 File Inclusion Function       167         Section 6 Conditional Assembly Function       171         6.1.2 Replacement Symbols       172         6.1.3 Conditional Assembly       173         6.1.4 Iterated Expansion       175         6.1.5 Conditional Assembly Directives       175         6.1.5 Conditional	2.4.2 Declaration of Export Symbols and Import Symbols	51
3.2 Notes on Executable Instructions       59         3.2.1 Notes on the Operation Size       59         3.2.2 Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions       70         3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations       72         Section 4 Assembler Directives       77         4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives       77         4.2 Assembler Directive Reference       79         4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directive       79         4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       90         4.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       128         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives       135         4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives       145         4.2.8 Other Assembler Directives       160         Section 5 File Inclusion Function       167         Section 6 Conditional Assembly Function       171         6.1.1 Preprocessor variables       171         6.1.2 Replacement Symbols       172         6.1.3 Conditional Assembly       175         6.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion       175         6.2 Conditional Assembly Directives       177         .ASSIGNA Integer P	Section 3 Executable Instructions	53
3.2.1 Notes on the Operation Size	3.1 Overview of Executable Instructions	53
3.2.2 Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions       70         3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations       72         Section 4 Assembler Directives       77         4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives       77         4.2 Assembler Directive Reference       79         4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directive       79         4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       90         4.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       128         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives       135         4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives       145         4.2.8 Other Assembler Directives       160         Section 5 File Inclusion Function       167         Section 6 Conditional Assembly Function       171         6.1 Overview of the Conditional Assembly Function       171         6.1.2 Replacement Symbols       172         6.1.3 Conditional Assembly       173         6.1.4 Iterated Expansion       175         6.1.5 Conditional Assembly Directives       175         6.2 Conditional Assembly Directives       177         .ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)       1	3.2 Notes on Executable Instructions	59
3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations       72         Section 4 Assembler Directives       77         4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives       77         4.2 Assembler Directive Reference       79         4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directive       79         4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       90         4.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       128         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives       135         4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives       145         4.2.8 Other Assembler Directives       160         Section 5 File Inclusion Function       167         Section 6 Conditional Assembly Function       171         6.1.1 Preprocessor variables       171         6.1.2 Replacement Symbols       172         6.1.3 Conditional Assembly       173         6.1.4 Iterated Expansion       175         6.1.5 Conditional Assembly Directives       175         6.2 Conditional Assembly Directives       177         .ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)       178	3.2.1 Notes on the Operation Size	59
Section 4 Assembler Directives       77         4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives       77         4.2 Assembler Directive Reference       79         4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directive       79         4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       90         4.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       128         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives       135         4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives       145         4.2.8 Other Assembler Directives       160         Section 5 File Inclusion Function       167         Section 6 Conditional Assembly Function       171         6.1 Overview of the Conditional Assembly Function       171         6.1.1 Preprocessor variables       171         6.1.2 Replacement Symbols       172         6.1.3 Conditional Assembly       173         6.1.4 Iterated Expansion       175         6.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion       175         6.2 Conditional Assembly Directives       177         . ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)       178	3.2.2 Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions	70
4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives774.2 Assembler Directive Reference794.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directive794.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives814.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives904.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives984.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives1284.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives1354.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives1454.2.8 Other Assembler Directives160Section 5 File Inclusion Function167Section 6 Conditional Assembly Function1716.1 Overview of the Conditional Assembly Function1716.1.1 Preprocessor variables1716.1.2 Replacement Symbols1726.1.3 Conditional Assembly1736.1.4 Iterated Expansion1756.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion1756.2 Conditional Assembly Directives177.ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)178	3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations	72
4.1 Overview of the Assembler Directives774.2 Assembler Directive Reference794.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directive794.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives814.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives904.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives984.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives1284.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives1354.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives1454.2.8 Other Assembler Directives160Section 5 File Inclusion Function167Section 6 Conditional Assembly Function1716.1 Overview of the Conditional Assembly Function1716.1.1 Preprocessor variables1716.1.2 Replacement Symbols1726.1.3 Conditional Assembly1736.1.4 Iterated Expansion1756.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion1756.2 Conditional Assembly Directives177.ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)178	Section 4 Assembler Directives	77
4.2 Assembler Directive Reference		
4.2.1 Target CPU Assembler Directive       79         4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives       81         4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       90         4.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       128         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives       135         4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives       145         4.2.8 Other Assembler Directives       160         Section 5 File Inclusion Function       167         Section 6 Conditional Assembly Function       171         6.1 Overview of the Conditional Assembly Function       171         6.1.1 Preprocessor variables       171         6.1.2 Replacement Symbols       172         6.1.3 Conditional Assembly       173         6.1.4 Iterated Expansion       175         6.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion       175         6.2 Conditional Assembly Directives       177         .ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)       178		
4.2.2 Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives814.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives904.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives984.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives1284.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives1354.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives1454.2.8 Other Assembler Directives160Section 5 File Inclusion Function1676.1 Overview of the Conditional Assembly Function1716.1.1 Preprocessor variables1716.1.2 Replacement Symbols1726.1.3 Conditional Assembly1736.1.4 Iterated Expansion1756.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion1756.2 Conditional Assembly Directives177.ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)178		
4.2.3 Symbol Handling Assembler Directives       90         4.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives       98         4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives       128         4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives       135         4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives       145         4.2.8 Other Assembler Directives       160         Section 5 File Inclusion Function       171         6.1 Overview of the Conditional Assembly Function       171         6.1.1 Preprocessor variables       171         6.1.2 Replacement Symbols       172         6.1.3 Conditional Assembly       173         6.1.4 Iterated Expansion       175         6.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion       175         6.2 Conditional Assembly Directives       177         .ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)       178		
4.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives984.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives1284.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives1354.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives1454.2.8 Other Assembler Directives160Section 5 File Inclusion Function167Section 6 Conditional Assembly Function1716.1 Overview of the Conditional Assembly Function1716.1.1 Preprocessor variables1716.1.2 Replacement Symbols1726.1.3 Conditional Assembly1736.1.4 Iterated Expansion1756.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion1756.2 Conditional Assembly Directives177.ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)178		
4.2.5 Export and Import Assembler Directives1284.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives1354.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives1454.2.8 Other Assembler Directives160Section 5 File Inclusion Function167Section 6 Conditional Assembly Function1716.1 Overview of the Conditional Assembly Function1716.1.1 Preprocessor variables1716.1.2 Replacement Symbols1726.1.3 Conditional Assembly1736.1.4 Iterated Expansion1756.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion1756.2 Conditional Assembly Directives177.ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)178	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
4.2.6 Object Module Assembler Directives1354.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives1454.2.8 Other Assembler Directives160Section 5 File Inclusion Function167Section 6 Conditional Assembly Function1716.1 Overview of the Conditional Assembly Function1716.1.1 Preprocessor variables1716.1.2 Replacement Symbols1726.1.3 Conditional Assembly1736.1.4 Iterated Expansion1756.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion1756.2 Conditional Assembly Directives177.ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)178		
4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives		
4.2.8 Other Assembler Directives		
Section 6 Conditional Assembly Function	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
6.1 Overview of the Conditional Assembly Function1716.1.1 Preprocessor variables1716.1.2 Replacement Symbols1726.1.3 Conditional Assembly1736.1.4 Iterated Expansion1756.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion1756.2 Conditional Assembly Directives177.ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)178	Section 5 File Inclusion Function	167
6.1 Overview of the Conditional Assembly Function1716.1.1 Preprocessor variables1716.1.2 Replacement Symbols1726.1.3 Conditional Assembly1736.1.4 Iterated Expansion1756.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion1756.2 Conditional Assembly Directives177.ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)178	Section 6 Conditional Assembly Function	171
6.1.1 Preprocessor variables1716.1.2 Replacement Symbols1726.1.3 Conditional Assembly1736.1.4 Iterated Expansion1756.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion1756.2 Conditional Assembly Directives177.ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)178		
6.1.2 Replacement Symbols1726.1.3 Conditional Assembly1736.1.4 Iterated Expansion1756.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion1756.2 Conditional Assembly Directives177.ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)178	•	
6.1.3 Conditional Assembly1736.1.4 Iterated Expansion1756.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion1756.2 Conditional Assembly Directives177.ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)178	•	
6.1.4 Iterated Expansion1756.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion1756.2 Conditional Assembly Directives177.ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)178		
6.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion	•	
6.2 Conditional Assembly Directives		
.ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible) 178		
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	

.DEFINE Definition of Preprocessor Replacement Character String	. 182
.AIF,.AELIF,.AELSE,.AENDI Conditional Assembly with Comparison	. 184
.AIFDEF, .AELSE,.AENDI Conditional Assembly with Definition	. 186
.AREPEAT, AENDR Iterated Expansion	. 188
.AWHILE, .AENDW Conditional Iterated Expansion	. 190
.AERROR Error Generation During Preprocessor Expansion	. 192
.EXITM Expansion Termination	
.ALIMIT Maximum Count Specification for .AWHILE Expansion in Preprocessor	. 195
Section 7 Macro Function	197
7.1 Overview of the Macro Function.	
7.2 Macro Function Directives	
.MACRO, ENDM Macro Definition	
.EXITM Expansion Termination	
7.3 Macro Body	
7.4 Macro Call	
7.4 Macro Can	
.LEN Character String Length Count	
.INSTR Character String Search	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
.SUBSTR Character Substring Extraction	. 213
Section 8 Automatic Literal Pool Generation Function	.215
8.1 Overview of Automatic Literal Pool Generation	. 215
8.2 Extended Instructions Related to Automatic Literal Pool Generation	. 215
8.3 Size Mode for Automatic Literal Pool Generation	. 216
8.4 Literal Pool Output	. 217
8.4.1 Literal Pool Output after Unconditional Branch	.218
8.4.2 Literal Pool Output to the .POOL Location	. 218
8.5 Literal Sharing	. 219
8.6 Literal Pool Output Suppression	. 220
8.7 Notes on Automatic Literal Pool Output	. 221
Section 9 SH-DSP Instructions	225
9.1 Program Contents	
9.1.1 Source Statements.	
	_
9.1.2 Parallel Operation Instructions	
9.1.3 Data Move Instructions	
9.1.4 Coding of Source Statements Across Multiple Lines	
9.2 DSP Instructions	
9.2.1 DSP Operation Instructions	
9.2.2 Data Move Instructions	
9.3 Notes on Executable Instructions	. 236

User's Guide	238
Section 1 Executing the Assembler	239
1.1 Command Line Format	
1.2 File Specification Format	
1.3 SHCPU Environment Variable	
Section 2 Command Line Options	243
2.1 Overview of Command Line Options	243
2.2 Command Line Option Reference	245
2.2.1 Target CPU Command Line Option	245
2.2.2 Object Module Command Line Options	246
2.2.3 Assembly Listing Command Line Options	250
2.2.4 File Inclusion Function Command Line Option	259
2.2.5 Conditional Assembly Command Line Options	261
2.2.6 Assembler Execution Command Line Option	264
2.2.7 Japanese Character Description Command Line Options	267
2.2.8 Automatic Literal Pool Generation Command Line Option	
2.2.9 Command Line Input Command Line Option	273
Appendix 275  Appendix A Limitations and Notes on Programming	277
Appendix B Sample Program	279
B.1 Sample Program Specifications	
B.2 Coding Example	
Appendix C Assemble Listing Output Example	283
C.1 Source Program Listing	
C.2 Cross-Reference Listing	285
C.3 Section Information Listing	286
Appendix D Error Messages	289
D.1 Error Types	289
D.2 Error Message Tables	292
Appendix E Differences from Former Version	
E.1 CPU	
E.2 Constants	
E.3 Added Assembler Directives	
E.4 Automatic Literal Pool Generation	
E.5 Added Command Line Option	315

E.6 Tag File Output	315
Appendix F ASCII Code Table	317
Supplement 318	
Supplement 1 Extended Instruction REPEAT for SH-DSP	319
1.1 REPEAT Description	319
1.2 Coding Examples	320
1.3 Notes on Extended Instruction REPEAT	
Supplement 2 Error Messages Related to REPEAT	325

vi **HITACHI** 

#### **Preface**

This manual describes the SH Series Cross Assembler, which supports development of software for Hitachi Super H RISC Engine Family (hereafter referred to as SH microprocessor).

This manual is organized as follows:

Overview: Gives an overview of the functions of the assembler.

Programmer's Guide: Describes the assembly language syntax and programming

techniques.

User's Guide: Describes the use (invocation) of the assembler program itself and

the command line options.

Appendix: Describes assembler limitations and error messages.

Read the following manuals before use of the assembler.

For information concerning the SH microprocessor hardware, refer to the hardware manual of the microprocessor.

For information concerning the SH microprocessor executable instructions, refer to the programming manual of the microprocessor.

For information concerning software development support tools:

"SH Series C Compiler User's Manual"

"H Series Linkage Editor User's Manual"

"H Series Librarian User's Manual"

"SH Series Simulator/Debugger User's Manual"

#### Notes:

The following symbols have special meanings in this manual.

• <item>: <specification item>

Δ: Blank space(s) or tab(s)

• %: The OS prompt (indicates the input waiting state)

• (RET): Press the Return (Enter) key.

• ...: The preceding item can be repeated.

• []: The enclosed item is optional (i.e., can be omitted.)

• Numbers are written as follows in this manual.

Binary: A prefix of "B" is used.
Octal: A prefix of "Q" is used.
Decimal: A prefix of "D" is used.

- Hexadecimal: A prefix of "H" is used.
- However, when there is no specification, the number without a prefix is decimal.

UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries, licensed exclusively through X/Open Company Limited.

MS-DOS is an operating system administrated by the Microsoft Corporation (United States).

SPARC is a CPU and workstation administrated by SPARC International, Inc.

HP9000/700 series is a trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

NEWS is a trademark of Sony Corporation.

PC-9800 series is a trademark of NEC Corporation.

IBM PC is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

2

## Overview

#### Section 1 Overview

The "SH Series Cross Assembler" (referred to below as the (or this) assembler) converts source programs written in assembly language into a format that can be handled by SH microprocessors, and outputs the result as an object module. Also, the results of the assembly processing are output as an assemble listing.

This assembler provides the following functions to support efficient program development:

- Assembler directives
  - Give the assembler various instructions.
- File inclusion function
  - Includes files into a source file.
- Conditional assembly function
  - Selects source statements to be assembled or repeats assembly according to a specified condition.
- Macro function
  - Gives a name to a sequence of statements and defines it as one instruction.
- Automatic literal pool generation function
   Interprets data transfer instructions MOV.W #imm, MOV.L #imm, and MOVA #imm that are not provided by the SH microprocessor as extended instructions and expands them into SH microprocessor executable instructions and constant data (literals).

Figure 1-1 shows the function of the assembler.

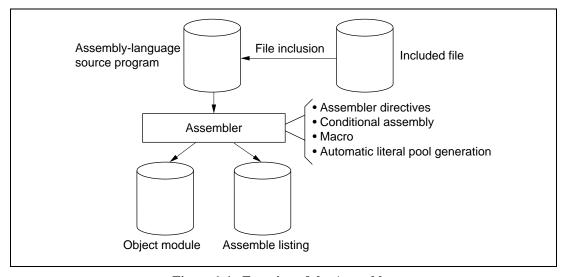


Figure 1-1 Function of the Assembler

# Section 2 Relationships between the Software Development Support Tools

The following software development support tools are available for the SH microprocessors.

- SH Series C Compiler (Referred to below as the C compiler.)
- H Series Linkage Editor (Referred to below as the linkage editor.)
- H Series Librarian (Referred to below as the librarian.)
- H Series Object Converter (Referred to below as the object converter.)
- SH Series Simulator/Debugger (Referred to below as the simulator/debugger.)

These tools assist in the efficient development of application software.

Figure 2-1 shows the relationships between the software development support tools.

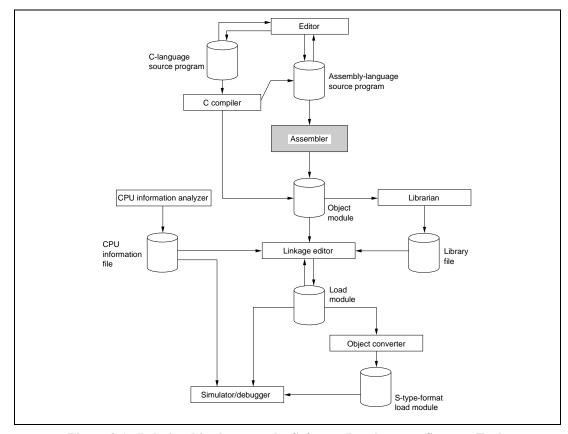


Figure 2-1 Relationships between the Software Development Support Tools

#### **Supplement:**

8

Use a general purpose editor (a text editor) to edit source programs.

The C compiler converts programs written in the C-language into either object modules or assembly-language source programs.

The librarian converts object modules and relocatable load modules into library files. We recommend handling processing that is common to multiple programs as a library file. (This has several advantages, including allowing modules to be easily managed.)

The linkage editor links together object modules and library files to produce load modules (executable programs).

The object converter converts load modules into the S-type format. (The S-type format is a standard load module format.)

The simulator/debugger assists debugging microprocessor software.

Load modules created by this development support system can be input to several types of emulator. (Emulators are systems for debugging microprocessor system hardware and software.) Also, S-type-format load modules can be input into most EPROM programmers.

# Programmer's Guide

#### Section 1 Program Elements

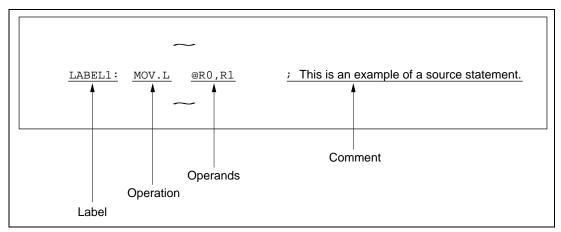
#### 1.1 Source Statements

If source programs are compared to natural language writing, a source statement will correspond to "a sentence." The "words" that make up a source statement are reserved words and symbols.

#### 1.1.1 Source Statement Structure

The figure below shows the structure of a source statement.

```
[<label>] [\emptyset<operation>[\emptyset<operand(s)>]] [<comment>] Example:
```



#### (1) Label

A symbol or a local symbol is written as a tag attached to a source statement.

A symbol is a name defined by the programmer.

#### (2) Operation

The mnemonic of an executable instruction, an extended instruction, an SH-DSP instruction, an assembler directive, or a directive statement is written as the operation.

Executable instructions must be SH microprocessor instructions.

Extended instructions are instructions that are expanded into executable instructions and constant data (literals). For details, refer to Programmer's Guide, 8, "Automatic Literal Pool Generation Function".

SH-DSP instructions are instructions that control the DSP of the SH-DSP microprocessor. For details, refer to Programmer's Guide, 9, "SH-DSP Instruction."

Assembler directives are instructions that give directions to the assembler.

Directive statements are used for file inclusion, conditional assembly, and macro functions. For details on each of these functions, refer to Programmer's Guide, 5, "File Inclusion Function", 6, "Conditional Assembly Function", or 7, "Macro Function".

#### (3) Operand

The object(s) of the operation's execution are written as the operand.

The number of operands and their types are determined by the operation. There are also operations which do not require any operands.

#### (4) Comment

Notes or explanations that make the program easier to understand are written as the comment.

#### 1.1.2 Coding of Source Statements

Source statements are written using ASCII characters. Character strings and comments can include Japanese kana and kanji characters (shift JIS code or EUC code).

In principle, a single statement must be written on a single line. The maximum length of a line is 255 bytes.

#### (1) Coding of Label

The label is written as follows:

Written starting in the first column,

Or

Written with a colon (:) appended to the end of the label.

Examples:

LABEL1
; This label is written starting in the first column.

LABEL2:
; This label is terminated with a colon.

\*\*This label is regarded as an error by the assembler,

\*\*since it is neither written starting in the first column

\*\*nor terminated with a colon.

#### (2) Coding of Operation

The operation is written as follows:

- When there is no label:
  - Written starting in the second or later column.
- When there is a label:

Written after the label, separated by one or more spaces or tabs.

Examples:

**ADD** R0,R1 ; An example with no label.

```
LABEL1: ADD R1,R2 ; An example with a label.
```

#### **CAUTION!**

Since white spaces and tabs are ASCII characters, each space or tab requires a byte of storage.

#### (3) Coding of Operand

The operand is written following the operation field, separated by one or more spaces or tabs. Examples:

```
ADD R0,R1 ; The ADD instruction takes two operands. SHAL R1 ; The SHAL instruction takes one operand.
```

#### (4) Coding of Comment

The comment is written following a semicolon (;).

The assembler regards all characters from the semicolon to the end of the line as the comment.

Examples:

```
ADD RO,R1 ; Adds RO to R1.
```

#### 1.1.3 Coding of Source Statements across Multiple Lines

A single source statement can be written across several lines in the following situations:

- When the source statement is too long as a single statement.
- When it is desirable to attach a comment to each operand.

Write source statements across multiple lines using the following procedure.

- 1. Insert a new line writing a comma that separates operands as the point to break the line.
- 2. Insert a plus sign (+) in the first column of the next line.
- 3. Continue writing the source statement following the plus sign.

Spaces and tabs can be inserted following the plus sign.

#### Examples:

```
.DATA.L H'FFFF0000,
+ H'FF00FF00,
+ H'FFFFFFF
```

A comment can be attached at the end of each line.

<sup>;</sup> In this example, a single source statement is written across three lines.

Examples:

```
.DATA.L H'FFFF0000, ; Initial value 1.
+ H'FF00FF00, ; Initial value 2.
+ H'FFFFFFFF ; Initial value 3.
```

; In this example, a comment is attached to each operand.

#### 1.2 Reserved Words

Reserved words are names that the assembler reserves as symbols with special meanings.

Reserved words must not be used as symbols. Reserved words are different depending on the CPU type. Table 1-1 lists the reserved words.

**Table 1-1** List of Reserved Words

Reserved Word		SH1	SH2	SH3	SH3E	SH-DSP
Register name	R0	0	0	0	0	0
	R1	0	0	0	0	0
	R2	0	0	0	0	0
	R3	0	0	0	0	0
	R4	0	0	0	0	0
	R5	0	0	0	0	0
	R6	0	0	0	0	0
	R7	0	0	0	0	0
	R8	0	0	0	0	0
	R9	0	0	0	0	0
	R10	0	0	0	0	0
	R11	0	0	0	0	0
	R12	0	0	0	0	0
	R13	0	0	0	0	0
	R14	0	0	0	0	0
	R15	0	0	0	0	0
	SP*	0	0	0	0	0
	SR	0	0	0	0	0
	GBR	0	0	0	0	0
	VBR	0	0	0	0	0
	MACH	0	0	0	0	0
	MACL	0	0	0	0	0
	PR	0	0	0	0	0
	PC	0	0	0	0	0
	SSR	×	×	0	0	×
	SPC	×	×	0	0	×

Note: R15 and SP indicate the same register.

Table 1-1 List of Reserved Words (cont)

Reserved Word		SH1	SH2	SH3	SH3E	SH-DSP
Register name	R0_BANK	×	×	0	0	×
	R1_BANK	×	×	0	0	×
	R2_BANK	×	×	0	0	×
	R3_BANK	×	×	0	0	×
	R4_BANK	×	×	0	0	×
	R5_BANK	×	×	0	0	×
	R6_BANK	×	×	0	0	×
	R7_BANK	×	×	0	0	×
	FR0	×	×	×	0	×
	FR1	×	×	×	0	×
	FR2	×	×	×	0	×
	FR3	×	×	×	0	×
	FR4	×	×	×	0	×
	FR5	×	×	×	0	×
	FR6	×	×	×	0	×
	FR7	×	×	×	0	×
	FR8	×	×	×	0	×
	FR9	×	×	×	0	×
	FR10	×	×	×	0	×
	FR11	×	×	×	0	×
	FR12	×	×	×	0	×
	FR13	×	×	×	0	×
	FR14	×	×	×	0	×
	FR15	×	×	×	0	×
	FPUL	×	×	×	0	×
	FPSCR	×	×	×	0	×
	MOD	×	×	×	×	0
	RE	×	×	×	×	0
	RS	×	×	×	×	0
	DSR	×	×	×	×	0
	A0	×	×	×	×	0
	A0G	×	×	×	×	0

Table 1-1 List of Reserved Words (cont)

Reserved Word		SH1	SH2	SH3	SH3E	SH-DSP
Register name	A1	×	×	×	×	0
	A1G	×	×	×	×	0
	M0	×	×	×	×	0
	M1	×	×	×	×	0
	X0	×	×	×	×	0
	X1	×	×	×	×	0
	Y0	×	×	×	×	0
	Y1	×	×	×	×	0
Operator	STARTOF	0	0	0	0	0
	SIZEOF	0	0	0	0	0
	HIGH	0	0	0	0	0
	LOW	0	0	0	0	0
	HWORD	0	0	0	0	0
	LWORD	0	0	0	0	0
	\$EVEN	0	0	0	0	0
	\$ODD	0	0	0	0	0
	\$EVEN2	0	0	0	0	0
	\$ODD2	0	0	0	0	0
Location counter	\$	0	0	0	0	0

Symbol meaning: O: Used as reserved word

×: Not used as reserved word

#### Reference:

CPU type → Programmer's Guide, 4.2.1, "Target CPU Assembler Directive"

Operators → Programmer's Guide, 1.6.1, "Expression Elements"

Location counter → Programmer's Guide, 1.5, "Location Counter"

Symbols → Programmer's Guide, 1.3, "Symbols"

#### 1.3 Symbols

#### 1.3.1 Functions of Symbols

Symbols are names defined by the programmer, and perform the following functions.

- Address symbols..... Express data storage and branch destination addresses.
- Constant symbols ..... Express constants.
- Aliases of register names.... Express general registers.
- Section names ..... Express section names. \*

Note: A section is a part of the program, and the linkage editor regards it as a unit of processing.

The following shows examples of symbol usages.

#### Examples:

```
; BRA is a branch instruction.
          BRA
                  SUB1
                                ; SUB1 is the address symbol of the destination.
SUB1:
                  100
                                ; .EQU is an assembler directive that sets a value to a
MAX:
         .EQU
                                ; symbol.
          MOV
                  #MAX,R0
                                ; MAX expresses the constant value 100.
                                  ; .REG is an assembler directive that defines a register
MIN:
         .REG
                    R0
                                  ; alias.
          MOV.B
                    #100, MIN ; MIN is an alias for R0.
         .SECTION CD, CODE, ALIGN=4
                               ; .SECTION is an assembler directive that declares a section.
                               ; CD is the name of the current section.
```

#### 1.3.2 Coding of Symbols

#### (1) Available Characters

The following members of the ASCII character can be used.

- Alphabetical uppercase and lowercase letters (A to Z, a to z)
- Numbers (0 to 9)
- Underscore (\_)
- Dollar sign (\$)

The assembler distinguishes uppercase letters from lowercase letters in symbols.

#### (2) First Character in a Symbol

The first character in a symbol must be one of the following.

- Alphabetical uppercase and lowercase letters (A to Z, a to z)
- Underscore (\_)
- Dollar sign (\$)

#### **CAUTION!**

The dollar sign character used alone is a reserved word that expresses the location counter.

#### Reference:

— Reserved words → Programmer's Guide, 1.2, "Reserved Words"

#### (3) Maximum Length of a Symbol

A symbol may contain up to 32 characters.

The assembler ignores any characters after the first 32.

#### (4) Names that Cannot Be Used as Symbols

Reserved words cannot be used as symbols. The following names must not be used because they are used as internal symbols by the assembler.

\_\$\$nnnn (n is a number from 0 to 9.)

Note: Internal symbols are necessary for assembler internal processing. Internal symbols are not output to assemble listings or object modules.

#### 1.4 Constants

#### 1.4.1 Integer Constants

Integer constants are expressed with a prefix that indicates the radix.

The radix indicator prefix is a notation that indicates the radix of the constant.

- Binary numbers ...... The radix indicator "B" plus a binary constant.
- Octal numbers ....... The radix indicator "Q" plus an octal constant.
- Decimal numbers ............ The radix indicator "D'" plus a decimal constant.
- Hexadecimal numbers ...... The radix indicator "H" plus a hexadecimal constant.

The assembler does not distinguish uppercase letters from lowercase letters in the radix indicator.

The radix indicator and the constant value must be written with no intervening space.

#### Examples:

```
.DATA.B B'10001000 ;
.DATA.B Q'210 ; These source statements express the same
.DATA.B D'136 ; numerical value.
.DATA.B H'88 ;
```

The radix indicator can be omitted. Integer constants with no radix indicator are normally decimal constants, although the radix for such constants can be changed with the .RADIX assembler directive.

#### Reference:

Interpretation of integer constants without a radix specified

```
→ Programmer's Guide, 4.2.7, "Other Assembler Directives", .RADIX
```

#### **Supplement:**

"Q" is used instead of "O" to avoid confusion with the digit 0.

#### 1.4.2 Character Constants

Character constants are considered to be constants that represent ASCII codes.

Character constants are written by enclosing up to 4 ASCII characters in double quotation marks.

The following ASCII characters can be used in character constants.

```
ASCII codes {'09 (tab) {'20 (space) to H' 7E (tilde)
```

#### Examples:

```
.DATA.L "ABC"; This is the same as .DATA.L H'00414243.
.DATA.W "AB"; This is the same as .DATA.W H'4142.
.DATA.B "A"; This is the same as .DATA.B H'41.

; The ASCII code for A is: H'41
; The ASCII code for B is: H'42
; The ASCII code for C is: H'43
```

In addition, Japanese kana and kanji characters in shift JIS code or EUC code can be used. When using Japanese characters in shift JIS code or EUC code, be sure to specify the SJIS or EUC command line option, respectively. Note that the shift JIS code and EUC code cannot be used together in one source program.

Use two double quotation marks in succession to indicate a single double quotation mark in a character constant.

#### Example:

```
.DATA.B "咖" ; This is a character constant consisting of a single double quotation mark.

.DATA.L "漢字" ; Japanese kanji characters.

.DATA.B "咖" ; This is a character constant consisting of a single double quotation mark.

.DATA.L "漢字" ; Japanese kanji characters.
```

#### **References:**

SJIS command line option

→ User's Guide, 2.2.7, "Japanese Character Command Line Options," -SJIS

→ User's Guide, 2.2.7, "Japanese Character Command Line Options," -EUC

#### 1.4.3 Floating-Point Numbers

Floating-point numbers can be specified as operands in floating-point operation instructions (FPU instructions) and assembler directives for reserving floating-point numbers.

#### **Floating-Point Number Representation:**

Floating-point numbers can be represented in decimal and hexadecimal.

• Decimal representation

$$F'[\{\pm\}] \begin{cases} n[.[m]] \\ . m \end{cases} [S[[\pm]xx]]$$

F' Indicates that the number is decimal. It cannnot be omitted.

n[. [m]] n indicates the integer part in decimal. m indicates the fraction part in decimal.

- . m Either the integer part or the fraction part can be omitted. If the sign  $(\pm)$  is omitted, the assembler assumes it is positive.
- S Indicates that the number is in single precision.

[ $[\pm]xx$ ] Indicates the exponent part in decimal. If omitted, the assembler assumes 0. If the sign  $(\pm)$  is omitted, the assembler assumes it is positive.

Example:

```
F'.0.5S-2 = 0.5 \times 10^{-2} = 0.005 = H'.3BA3D70A

F'..123S3 = 0.123 \times 10^{3} = 123 = H'.42F60000

F'.0.999 = 0.999 = H'.3F7FBF76
```

Hexadecimal representation

 $H'XXXXXXXX[.S\}$ 

H' Indicates that the number is hexadecimal. It cannot be omitted.

XXXXXXX

Indicates the bit pattern of the floating-point constant in hexadecimal. If the bit pattern is shorter than the specified data length, it is aligned to the right end of the reserved area and 0s are added to the remaining bits in the reserved area. If the bit pattern is longer than the specified data length, the right-side bits of the bit pattern are allocated for the specified data length and the remaining bits of the bit pattern are ignored.

S Indicates that the number is in single precision.

This format directly specifies the bit pattern of the floating-point constant to represent data that is difficult to represent in decimal format, such as 0s for single-precision data length or infinity.

#### Example:

H'000000000.S = H'00000000 H'FFFF.S = H'0000FFFF H'123456789AB = H'456789AB

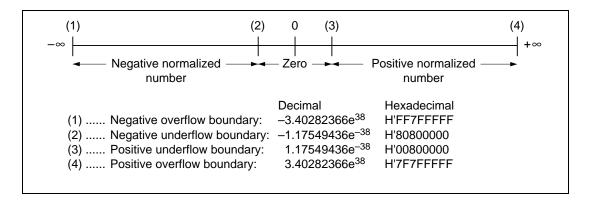
#### **Floating-Point Data Range:**

Table 1-2 lists the floating-point data types.

**Table 1-2** Floating-Point Data Types

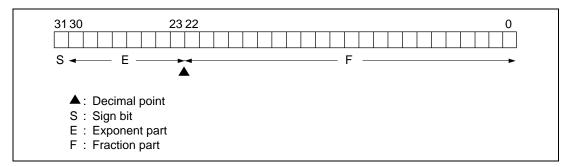
Data Type	Description
Normalized number	The absolute value is between the underflow and overflow boundaries including the boundary values.
Zero	The absolute value is between 0 and the underflow boundary, including 0.
Infinity	The absolute value is larger than the overflow boundary.
Not-a-Number (NAN)	A value that is not a numerical value. Includes sNAN (signaling NAN) and qNAN (quiet NAN).

These data types are shown on the following number line. NAN cannot be shown on the number line because it is not handled as a numerical value.



#### **Floating-Point Data Format:**

The floating-point data format consists of a sign bit, an 8-bit exponent part, and a 23-bit fraction part.



#### • Sign bit

Indicates the sign of a value. Positive and negative are represented by 0 and 1, respectively.

• Exponent part

Indicates the exponent of a value. The actual exponent value is obtained by subtracting the bias value (127) from the value specified in this exponent part.

• Fraction part

Each bit has its own significance and corresponds to 2<sup>-1</sup>, 2<sup>-2</sup>, ..., 2<sup>-23</sup> from the start bit, respectively.

A floating-point number is represented using S, E, and F as follows:

$$(1.F) = 1 + b0 \times 2^{-1} + b1 \times 2^{-2} + \dots + b22 \times 2^{-23}$$

bi  $(0 \le i \le 22)$  indicates the value (0 or 1) of the "i"th bit in the fraction part.

Table 1-3 shows the floating-point representation for each data type.

Table 1-3 Floating-Point Representation for Each Data Type

Data Type	Exponent (E)	Fraction (F)	Representation
Normalized number	1 ≤ E ≤ 254	Any value	(-1) <sup>s</sup> . 2 <sup>E-127</sup> . (1.F)
Zero	= 0	= 0	(-1) <sup>s</sup> . 0 +0 = H'00000000 -0 = H'80000000
Infinity	= 255	= 0	(-1) <sup>s</sup> . + = H'00000000 - = H'80000000
NAN	= 255	! = 0	sNAN: Bit 22 is 1. qNAN: Bit 22 is 0.

#### 1.4.4 Fixed-Point Numbers

Fixed-point numbers can be specified as operands in the assembler directive for reserving fixed-point numbers.

#### **Fixed-Point Number Representation:**

Fixed-point numbers express real numbers ranging from -1.0 to 1.0 in decimal.

Word size and long word size are available for fixed-point numbers.

• Word-size fixed-point numbers

Two-byte signed integers expressing real numbers ranging from -1.0 to 1.0.

The real number expressed by 2-byte signed integer x (-32,768 < = x < = 32,767) is x/32768. Example:

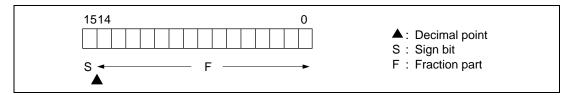
• Long word-size fixed-point numbers

Four-byte signed integers expressing real numbers ranging from -1.0 to 1.0. The real number expressed by 4-byte signed ingeter x (-2,147,483,648 < = x < = 2,147,483,647) is x/2147483648.

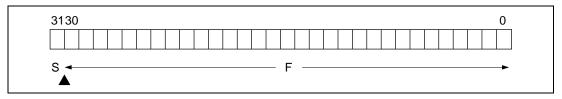
#### Example:

#### **Fixed-Point Data Format:**

- The fixed-point data format consists of a sign bit and a 15-bit fraction part in word size, and a sign bit and a 31-bit fraction part in long word size. The decimal point is assumed to be fixed on the right of the sign bit.
- Word size



• Long word size



- Sign bit (S)
  - Indicates the sign of a value. Positive and negative are represented by 0 and 1, respectively.
- Fraction part (F)
  Each bit has its own significance and corresponds to 2-1, 2-2, ..., 2-31 from the start bit, respectively.

#### **Valid Range for Fixed-Point Numbers:**

In long-word size, 31 bits can represent nine digits of data in decimal, but the assembler handles ten digits in decimal as a valid number, rounds the 35th bit in RN (round to the nearer absolute value) mode, and uses the high-order 31 bits of the result as fixed-point data.

Note: The actual fixed-point data range is -1.0 to 0.999999999, but the assembler assumes 1.0 as 0.999999999 and represents it as H'7FFFFFF.

# 1.5 Location Counter

The location counter expresses the address (location) in memory where the corresponding object code (the result of converting executable instructions and data into codes the microprocessor can regard) is stored.

The value of the location counter is automatically adjusted according to the object code output.

The value of the location counter can be changed intentionally using assembler directives.

#### Examples:

	~	
.ORG	н′00001000	; This assembler directive sets the location counter to ; H'00001000.
.DATA.W	H'FF	<ul> <li>7 The object code generated by this assembler directive has</li> <li>7 a length of 2 bytes.</li> <li>8 The location counter changes to H'00001002.</li> </ul>
.DATA.W	H'F0	<ul> <li>7 The object code generated by this assembler directive has</li> <li>7 a length of 2 bytes.</li> <li>8 The location counter changes to H'00001004.</li> </ul>
.DATA.W	н'10	<ul> <li>7 The object code generated by this assembler directive has</li> <li>7 a length of 2 bytes.</li> <li>8 The location counter changes to H'00001006.</li> </ul>
.ALIGN	4	<ul> <li>7 The value of the location counter is corrected to be a multiple</li> <li>7 of 4.</li> <li>8 The location counter changes to H'00001008.</li> </ul>
.DATA.L	H'FFFFFFFF	<ul> <li>7 The object code generated by this assembler directive has</li> <li>7 a length of 4 bytes.</li> <li>8 The location counter changes to H'0000100C.</li> </ul>

- ; .ORG is an assembler directive that sets the value of the location counter.
- : .ALIGN is an assembler directive that adjusts the value of the location counter.
- : .DATA is an assembler directive that reserves data in memory.
- ; .W is a specifier that indicates that data is handled in word (2 bytes) size.
- ; .L is a specifier that indicates that data is handled in long word (4 bytes) size.

# **References:**

Setting the value of the location counter

→ Programmer's Guide, 4.2.2, "Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives" .ORG

Correcting the value of the location counter

 $\rightarrow$  Programmer's Guide, 4.2.2, "Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives" . ALIGN

The location counter is referenced using the dollar sign symbol.

# Examples:

LABEL1: .EQU \$ ; This assembler directive sets the value of the ; location counter to the symbol LABEL1.

; .EQU is an assembler directive that sets the value to a symbol.

# 1.6 Expressions

Expressions are combinations of constants, symbols, and operators that derive a value, and are used as the operands of executable instructions and assembler directives.

# 1.6.1 Elements of Expression

An expression consists of terms, operators, and parentheses.

# (1) Terms

The terms are the followings:

- A constant
- The location counter reference (\$)
- A symbol (excluding aliases of the register name)
- The result of a calculation specified by a combination of the above terms and an operator. An independent term is also a type of expression.

# (2) Operators

Table 1-4 shows the operators supported by the assembler.

**Table 1-4** Operators

Operator Type Operator		Operation	Coding
Arithmetic operations	+	Unary plus	+ <term></term>
	-	Unary minus	- <term></term>
	+	Addition	<term1> + <term2></term2></term1>
	-	Subtraction	<term1> - <term2></term2></term1>
	*	Multiplication	<term1> * <term2></term2></term1>
	/	Division	<term1> / <term2></term2></term1>
Logic operations	~ ^	Unary negation	~ <term></term>
	&	Logical AND	<term1> &amp; <term2></term2></term1>
		Logical OR	<term1>   <term2></term2></term1>
	~ ^	Exclusive OR	<term1> ~ <term2></term2></term1>
Shift operations	<<	Arithmetic left shift	<term 1=""> &lt;&lt; <term 2=""></term></term>
	>>	Arithmetic right shift	<term 1=""> &gt;&gt; <term 2=""></term></term>

**Table 1-4** Operators (cont)

Operator Type	Operator Operation		Coding	
Section set operations*	STARTOF	Derives the starting address of a section set.	STARTOF <section name=""></section>	
	SIZEOF	Derives the size of a section set in bytes.	SIZEOF <section name=""></section>	
Even/odd operations	\$EVEN	1 when the value is a multiple of 2, and 0 otherwise	\$EVEN <symbol></symbol>	
	\$ODD	0 when the value is a multiple of 2, and 1 otherwise	\$ODD <symbol></symbol>	
	\$EVEN2	1 when the value is a multiple of 4, and 0 otherwise	\$EVEN2 <symbol></symbol>	
	\$ODD2	0 when the value is a multiple of 4, and 1 otherwise	\$ODD2 <symbol></symbol>	
Extraction operations	HIGH	Extracts the high-order byte	HIGH <term></term>	
	LOW	Extracts the low-order byte	LOW <term></term>	
	HWORD	Extracts the high-order word	HWORD <term></term>	
	LWORD	Extracts the low-order word	LWORD <term></term>	

Note: See the supplement below.

# **Supplement:**

In this assembly language, programs are divided into units called section. Sections are the units in which linkage processing is performed.

When there are multiple sections of the same type and same name within a given program, the linkage editor links them into a single "section set".

### **Reference:**

Sections → Programmer's Guide, 2.1, "Sections"

# (3) Parentheses

Parentheses modify the operation priority.

See the next section, section 1.6.2, "Operation Priority", for a description of the use of parentheses.

# 1.6.2 Operation Priority

When multiple operations appear in a single expression, the order in which the processing is performed is determined by the operator priority and by the use of parentheses. The assembler processes operations according to the following rules.

#### <Rule 1>

Processing starts from operations enclosed in parentheses. When there are multiple parentheses, processing starts with the operations surrounded by the innermost parentheses.

#### <Rule 2>

Processing starts with the operator with the highest priority.

#### <Rule 3>

Processing proceeds in the direction of the operator association rule when operators have the same priority.

Table 1-5 shows the operator priority and the association rule.

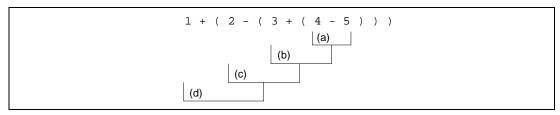
Table 1-5 Operator Priority and Association Rules

Pric	rity	Operator	Association Rule
1	(high)	+ - ~ ^ STARTOF SIZEOF \$EVEN \$ODD \$EVEN2 \$ODD2 HIGH LOW HWORD LWORD*	Operators are processed from right to left.
2		* /	Operators are processed from left to right.
3	$\downarrow$	+ -	Operators are processed from left to right.
4		<< >>	Operators are processed from left to right.
5		&	Operators are processed from left to right.
6	(low)	~ ^	Operators are processed from left to right.

Note: The operators of priority 1 (highest priority) are for unary operation.

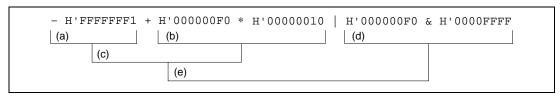
The figures below show examples of expressions.

#### Example 1:



The assembler calculates this expression in the order (a) to (d).

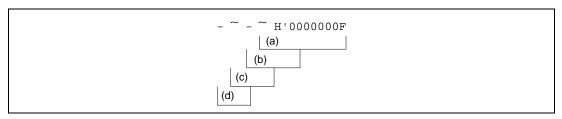
# Example 2:



The assembler calculates this expression in the order (a) to (e).

The result of (a) is H'0000000F}
The result of (b) is H'00000F00}
The result of (c) is H'00000F0F}
The result of (d) is H'00000F0F}
The result of (e) is H'00000FFF}

# Example 3:



The assembler calculates this expression in the order (a) to (d).

The result of (a) is H'FFFFFFF0}

The result of (b) is H'00000010}

The final result of this calculation is H'00000011.

The result of (d) is H'00000011}

# 1.6.3 Detailed Description on Operation

**STARTOF Operation:** Determines the start address of a section set after the specified sections are linked by the linkage editor.

**SIZEOF Operation:** Determines the size of a section set after the specified section are linked by the linkage editor.

Example:

```
.CPU
                    SH1
         .SECTION INIT_RAM, DATA, ALIGN=4
         .RES.B
                   H'100
         .SECTION INIT_DATA, DATA, ALIGN=4
INIT_BGN .DATA.L (STARTOF INIT_RAM)....; (1)
INIT_END .DATA.L
                   (STARTOF INIT_RAM) + (SIZEOF INIT_RAM)...; (2)
         .SECTION MAIN, CODE, ALIGN=4
INITIAL:
         MOV.L
                    DATA1,R6
         VOM
                    #0,R5
                   DATA1+4,R3
         MOV.L
                   LOOP2
         BRA
         MOV.L
                    @R3,R4
LOOP1:
                                   Initializes the data area in section
         MOV.L
                   R5,@R4
                                   INIT_RAM to 0.
         ADD
                    #4,R4
LOOP2:
         MOV.L
                    @R6,R3
         CMP/HI
                   R3,R4
         BF
                    LOOP1
         RTS
         NOP
DATA1:
                   INIT_END
         .DATA.L
        .DATA.L
                    INIT_BGN
         .END
(1) Determines the start address of section INIT_RAM.
(2) Determines the end address of section INIT_RAM.
```

**HIGH Operation:** Extracts the high-order byte from the low-order two bytes of a 4-byte value.

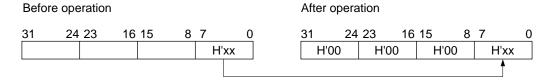


# Example:

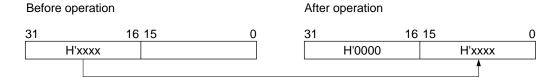
LABEL .EQU H'00007FFF

.DATA HIGH LABEL; Reserves integer data H'0000007F on memory.

**LOW Operation:** Extracts the lowest-order one byte from a 4-byte value.



**HWORD Operation:** Extracts the high-order two bytes from a 4-byte value.



**LWORD Operation:** Extracts the low-order two bytes from a 4-byte value.



Even/Odd Operation: Determines if the value of the address symbol is a multiple of 2 or 4.

Table 1-6 shows the even/odd operations.

Table 1-6 Even/Odd Operations

Operator	Operation
\$EVEN	1 when the value is a multiple of 2, and 0 otherwise
\$ODD	0 when the value is a multiple of 2, and 1 otherwise
\$EVEN2	1 when the value is a multiple of 4, and 0 otherwise
\$ODD2	0 when the value is a multiple of 4, and 1 otherwise

# Example:

To obtain the current program counter value using an \$ODD2 operator.

```
LAB:

MOVA @(0,PC),R0

ADD #-4+2*$ODD2 LAB,R0 ; $ODD2 gives 0 when LAB is ; a multiple of 4, and gives 1 when ; LAB is not a multiple of 4.
```

#### 1.6.4 Notes on Expressions

# (1) Internal Processing

The assembler regards expression values as 32-bit signed values.

Example:

~<sub>H'F0</sub>

The assembler regards H'F0 as H'000000F0.

Therefore, the value of ~H'F0 is H'FFFFF0F. (Note that this is not H'0000000F.)

#### (2) Arithmetic Operators

Where values must be determined at assembly, the multiplication and division operators cannot take terms that contain relative values (values which are not determined until the end of the linkage process) as their operands.

#### Example:

```
.IMPORT SYM
.DATA SYM/10 ; Correctly assembled.
.ORG SYM/10 ; An error will occur.
```

Also, a divisor of 0 cannot be used with the division operator.

### (3) Logic Operators

The logic operators cannot take terms that contain relative values as their operands.

#### Reference:

Relative values → Programmer's Guide, 2.2, "Absolute and Relative Values".

# 1.7 Character Strings

Character strings are sequences of character data.

The following ASCII characters can be used in character strings.

```
ASCII codes {H'09 (tab)
{H'20 (space) to H'7E (tilde)
```

A single character in a character string has as its value the ASCII code for that character and is represented as a byte sized data object. In addition, Japanese kana and kanji characters in shift JIS code or EUC code can be used. When using Japanese characters in shift JIS code or EUC code, be sure to specify the SJIS or EUC command line option, respectively. If not specified, Japanese characters are handled as the Japanese code specified by the host machine.

Character strings are written enclosed in double quotation marks.

Use two double quotation marks in succession to indicate a single double quotation mark in a character string.

#### Examples:

```
### This statement reserves the character string data; Hello!

**Tセンブラ" ; This statement reserves the character string data; アセンブラ

**This statement reserves the character string data; アセンブラ

**This statement reserves the character string data; "Hello!"

; SDATA ***Hello!"

; SDATA is an assembler directive that reserves; character string data in memory.
```

# **Supplement:**

The difference between character constants and character strings is as follows.

Character constants are numeric values. They have a data size of either 1 byte, 2 bytes, or 4 bytes.

Character strings cannot be handled as numeric values. A character string has a data size between 1 byte and 255 bytes.

#### **References:**

SJIS command line option

→ User's Guide, 2.2.7, "Japanese Character Command Line Options," -SJIS

EUC command line option

→ User's Guide, 2.2.7, "Japanese Character Command Line Options," -EUC

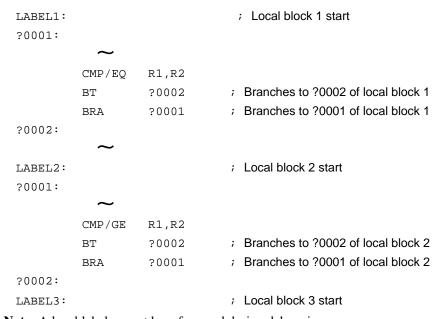
# 1.8 Local Label

#### 1.8.1 Local Label Functions

A local label is valid locally between address symbols. Since a local label does not conflict with the other labels outside its scope, the user does not have to consider other label names. A local label can be defined by writing in the label field in the same way as a normal address symbol, and can be referenced by an operand.

An example of local label descriptions is shown below.

# Example:



**Note:** A local label cannot be referenced during debugging.

A local label cannot be specified as any of the following items:

- Macro name
- Section name
- Object module name
- Label in .ASSIGNA, .ASSIGNC, .EQU, .ASSIGN, .REG, or .DEFINE
- Operand in .EXPORT, .IMPORT, or .GLOBAL

# 1.8.2 Description Method of Local Label

#### First Character:

A local label is a character string starting with a question mark (?).

#### **Usable Characters:**

The following ASCII characters can be used in a local label, except for the first character:

- Alphabetical uppercase and lowercase letters (A to Z and a to z)
- Numbers (0 to 9)
- Underscore (\_)
- Dollar sign (\$)

The assembler distinguishes uppercase letters from lowercase ones in local labels.

### **Maximum Length:**

The length of local label characters is between 2 and 16 characters. If 17 or more characters are specified, the assembler will not recognize them as a local label.

# 1.8.3 Scope of Local Labels

The scope of a local label is called a local block. A local block is divided by address symbols, and by the .SECTION directive.

The local label defined within a local block can be referenced in that local block.

A local label belonging to a local block is interpreted as being unique even if its spelling is the same as local labels in other local blocks; it does not cause an error.

**Note:** The address symbols defined by the .EQU or .ASSIGN directive are not interpreted as delimiters for the local block.

# Section 2 Basic Programming Knowledge

# 2.1 Sections

If source programs are compared to natural language writing, a section will correspond to a "chapter." The section is the processing unit used when the linkage editor links object modules.

# 2.1.1 Section Types by Usage

Sections are classified by usage into the following types.

- Code section
- Data section
- Common section
- · Stack section
- Dummy section

# (1) Code Section

The following can be written in a code section:

- Executable instructions
- Extended instructions

Assembler directives that reserve initialized data.

# Examples:

. I			
	.SECTION	CD, CODE, ALIGN=4	<ul><li>; This assembler directive declares a</li><li>; code section with the name CD.</li></ul>
	MOV.L	X,R1	; This is an executable instruction.
	MOV	R1,R2	
	~		
	.ALIGN	4	
X:	.DATA.L	H'FFFFFFFF	; This assembler directive reserves
			; initialized data.

#### (2) Data Section

The following can be written in a data section:

- Assembler directives that reserve initialized data.
- Assembler directives that reserve uninitialized data.

Examples:

```
.SECTION
              DT1, DATA, ALIGN=4
                                        ; This assembler directive declares
                                        ; a data section with the name DT1.
                                        ; These assembler directives reserve
.DATA.W
              H'FF00
.DATA.B
              H'FF
                                        ; initialized data.
           DT2, DATA, ALIGN=4
                                        ; This assembler directive declares
.SECTION
                                        ; a data section with the name DT2.
.RES.W
             10
                                        ; These assembler directives reserve
                                        ; data areas that do not have initial
.RES.B
             10
                                        ; values.
```

### (3) Common Section

A common section is used as a section to hold data that is shared between files when a source program consists of multiple source files.

The following can be written in a common section:

- Assembler directives that reserve initialized data.
- Assembler directives that reserve uninitialized data.

#### **Supplement:**

The linkage editor reserves common sections with the same name to the same area in memory. In the example shown in figure 2-1, the common section CM declared in file A and the common section CM declared in file B are reserved to the same area in memory.

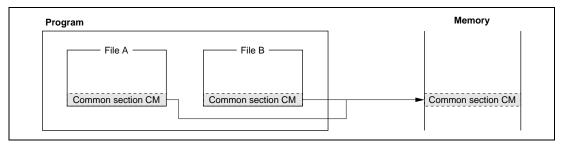


Figure 2-1 Memory Reservation of Common Section

#### (4) Stack Section

The section that the SH microprocessor uses as a stack area (an area for temporary data storage) is called the stack section.

The following can be written in the stack section:

— Assembler directives that reserve uninitialized data.

### Examples:

```
.SECTION ST, STACK, ALIGN=4; This assembler directive declares a stack section with the name ST.

.RES.B 1024; This assembler directive reserves a stack area of 1024 bytes.
```

STK:

#### (5) Dummy Section

A dummy section is a hypothetical section for representing data structures. The assembler does not output dummy sections to the object module.

The following can be written in a dummy section:

— Assembler directives that reserve uninitialized data.

#### Examples:

```
. SECTION DM, DUMMY

; This assembler directive declares
; a dummy section with the name DM.

.RES.B 1

; The assembler does not output the

A: .RES.B 1

; section DM to the object module.

B: .RES.B 2
```

Specific methods for specifying data structures are described in the supplement on the next page.

# **Supplement:**

As shown in figure 2-2, it is possible to access areas in memory by using address symbols from a dummy section.

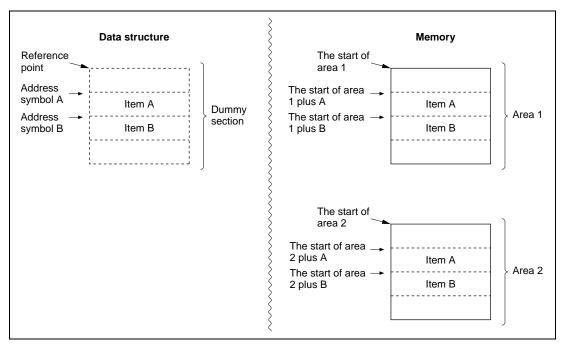


Figure 2-2 Data Structure Example Using Dummy Section

# Example:

In the example above, assume that R1 holds the starting address of area 1 and R2 holds the starting address of area 2.

#### **CAUTION!**

- 1. The following cannot be used in stack and dummy sections:
  - a. Executable instructions
  - b. Extended instructions
  - c. Assembler directives that reserve initialized data
     (.DATA, .DATAB, .SDATA, .SDATAB, .SDATAC, .SDATAZ, .FDATA, .FDATAB, and .XDATA)
- 2. When using a data or common section, be sure to keep in mind whether that section is reserved to ROM or RAM.

#### 2.1.2 Absolute Address Sections and Relative Address Sections

A section can be classified as either an absolute address section or as a relative address section depending on whether absolute start addresses are given to the sections at assembly.

#### (1) Absolute Address Section

The memory location of absolute address sections is specified in the source program, and cannot be changed by the linkage editor. In this assembly language, locations in an absolute address section are expressed as absolute addresses, which are addresses that express the position in memory itself.

#### Examples:

- . SECTION ABS, DATA, LOCATE=H'0000F000 ; ABS is an absolute address section. ; The starting address of section ABS is ; the absolute address H'0000F000.

  . DATA.W H'1111 ; The constant H'1111 is reserved at ; he absolute address H'0000F000.
- (2) Relative Address Section

.DATA.W H'2222

The location in memory of relative sections is not specified in the source program, but rather is determined when the sections are linked by the linkage editor. In this assembly language, locations in a relative address section are expressed as relative addresses, which are addresses that express the position relative to the start of the section itself.

; The constant H'2222 is reserved at ; he absolute address H'0000F002.

# Examples:

. SECTION REL, DATA, ALIGN=4; REL is a relative address section.

; The starting address of section REL is

; determined after linkage.

. DATA.W H'1111 ; The constant H'1111 is reserved at the

; relative address H'00000000.

. DATA.W H'2222 ; The constant H'2222 is reserved at the

; relative address H'00000002.

# **Supplement:**

Dummy sections correspond neither to relative nor to absolute address sections.

# 2.2 Absolute and Relative Values

Absolute values are determined when assembly completes. Relative values are not determined until the linkage editor completes.

#### 2.2.1 Absolute Values

The following are the absolute values handled by the assembler.

#### (1) Constants

- Integer constants
- Character constants
- Symbols that have a value that is one of the above (hereafter referred to as constant symbols).

#### (2) Absolute Address Values

- The location counter referenced in an absolute address section
- The location counter referenced in a dummy section
- Symbols that have a value that is one of the above (hereafter referred to as absolute address symbols).

#### (3) Other Absolute Values

Expressions whose value is determined when assembly completes.

# 2.2.2 Relative Values

The following are the relative values handled by the assembler.

#### (1) Relative Address Values

- The location counter referenced in a relative address segment
- Symbols that have the above as a value (hereafter referred to as relative address symbols).

### (2) External Reference Values

Symbols that reference another file (hereafter referred to as import symbols).

#### (3) Other Relative Values

Expressions whose value is not determined until the linkage editor completes.

# 2.3 Symbol Definition and Reference

# 2.3.1 Symbol Definition

# (1) Normal Definition

The normal method for defining a symbol is to write that symbol in the label field of a source statement. The value of that symbol will then be the value of the location counter at that point in the program.

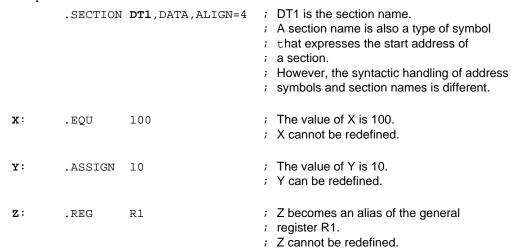
Examples:

	.SECTION	N DTI,DATA,LOCA	TE=H'0000F000; This statement declares a absolute address section.
			, absolute address section.
<b>x1</b> :	.DATA.W	н'1111	; The value of X1 becomes H'0000F000
x2:	.DATA.W	H'2222	; The value of X2 becomes H'0000F002
	-	~	
	.SECTION I	DT2,DATA,ALIGN=	; This statement declares a relative
			; address section.
<b>Y1</b> :	.DATA.W H	H'1111	; The value of Y1 is determined when
			; the linkage editor completes, and its
			; value is the start address of the section
Y2:	.DATA.W H	H'2222	; The value of Y2 is determined when
			; the linkage editor completes, and its
			; value is the start address of the section
			; plus 2.

# (2) Definition by Assembler Directive

Symbols can be defined by using assembler directives to set an arbitrary value or a special meaning.

# Examples:



# 2.3.2 Symbol Reference

There are three forms of symbol reference as follows:

- Forward reference
- Backward reference
- External reference

# **Supplement:**

Figure 2-3 shows the meaning of the terms forward and backward as used in this manual.

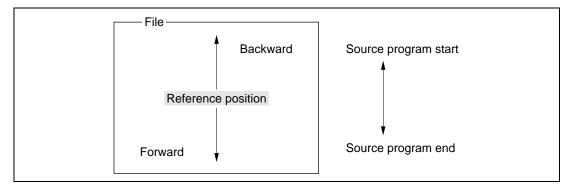


Figure 2-3 Meaning of the Terms Forward and Backward

Figure 2-4 shows the meaning of the term external as used in this manual.

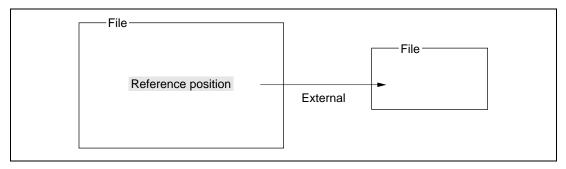


Figure 2-4 Meaning of the Term External

# (1) Forward Reference

Forward reference means referencing a symbol that is defined forward from the point of reference.

Examples:

BRA **FORWARD** ; BRA is a branch instruction.

; This is a forward reference to the symbol FORWARD.

FORWARD:

# (2) Backward Reference

Backward reference means referring to a symbol that is defined backward from the point of reference.

Examples:

BACK:

BRA BACK ; BRA is a branch instruction.

; This is a backward reference to the symbol BACK.

#### (3) External Reference

When a source program consists of multiple source files, a reference to a symbol defined in another file is called an external reference. External reference is described in the next section, 2.4, "Separate Assembly".

# 2.4 Separate Assembly

# 2.4.1 Separate Assembly

Separate assembly refers to the technique of creating a source program in multiple separate source files, and finally creating a single load module by linking together those source files' object modules using the linkage editor.

The process of developing software often consists of repeatedly correcting and reassembling the program. In such cases, if the source program is partitioned, it will be only necessary to reassemble the source file that was changed. As a result, the time required to construct the complete program will be significantly reduced.

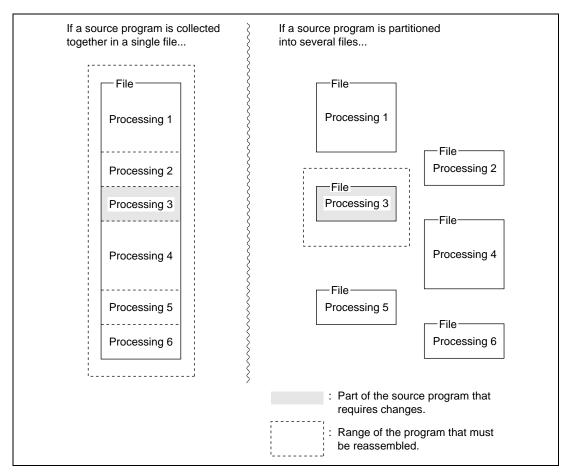


Figure 2-5 Relationship between the Changed Range of the Source Program and the Range of the Program that must be Reassembled

The procedure involved in separate assembly consists of steps 1 to 4.

- 1. Investigate methods for partitioning the program.
  - Normally, programs are partitioned by function.
  - Note that the memory reservation of the section must also be considered at this point.
- 2. Divide the source program into separate files and edit those files accordingly.
- 3. Assemble the individual files.
- 4. Link the individual object modules into a single load module.

# 2.4.2 Declaration of Export Symbols and Import Symbols

When a source program consists of multiple files, referencing a symbol defined in one file from another file is called "external reference" or "import." When referencing a symbol externally (this declaration is called "external definition" or "export"), it is necessary to declare to the assembler that "this symbol is shared between multiple files."

# (1) Export Symbol Declaration

This declaration is used to declare that the definition of the symbol is valid in other files. .EXPORT or .GLOBAL directive is used to make this declaration.

# (2) Import Symbol Declaration

This declaration is used to declare that a symbol defined in another file is referenced. .IMPORT or GLOBAL directive is used to make this declaration. Examples:

In this example the symbol MAX is defined in file A and referenced in file B.

# File A:

.EXPORT MAX ; Declares MAX to be an export symbol.
.EQU 100 ; Defines MAX.

File B:

.IMPORT MAX ; Declares MAX to be an import symbol.
MOV #MAX,R0 ; References MAX.

# **Reference:**

Symbol Export and Import

 $\rightarrow$  Programmer's Guide, 4.2.5, "Export and Import Assembler Directives", .EXPORT, .IMPORT, .GLOBAL

# Section 3 Executable Instructions

# 3.1 Overview of Executable Instructions

The executable instructions are the instructions of SH microprocessor. SH microprocessor interprets and executes the executable instructions in the object code stored in memory.

An executable instruction source statement has the following basic form.



This section describes the mnemonic, operation size, and addressing mode. The other elements are described in detail in section 1, "Program Elements", in the Programmer's Guide.

#### (1) Mnemonic

The mnemonic expresses the executable instruction. Abbreviations that indicate the type of processing are provided as mnemonics for SH microprocessor instructions.

The assembler does not distinguish uppercase and lowercase letters in mnemonics.

### (2) Operation Size

The operation size is the unit for processing data. The operation sizes vary with the executable instruction. The assembler does not distinguish uppercase and lowercase letters in the operation size.

Specifier	Data Size
В	Byte
W	Word (2 bytes)
L	Long word (4 bytes)
S	Single precision (4 bytes)

# (3) Addressing Mode

The addressing mode specifies the data area accessed, and the destination address. The addressing modes vary with the executable instruction. Table 3-1 shows the addressing mode.

Table 3-1 Addressing Modes

Addressing Mode	Name	Description
Rn	Register direct	The contents of the specified register.
@Rn	Register indirect	A memory location. The value in Rn gives the start address of the memory accessed.
@Rn+	Register indirect with post-increment	A memory location. The value in Rn (before being incremented*1) gives the start address of the memory accessed.  SH microprocessor first uses the value in Rn for the memory reference, and increments Rn afterwards.
@-Rn	Register indirect with pre-decrement	A memory location. The value in Rn (after being decremented*2) gives the start address of the memory accessed.  SH microprocessor first decrements Rn, and then uses that value for the memory reference.
@(disp,Rn)	Register indirect with displacement*3	A memory location. The start address of the memory access is given by: the value of Rn plus the displacement (disp).  The value of Rn is not changed.
@(R0,Rn)	Register indirect with index	A memory location. The start address of the memory access is given by: the value of R0 plus the value of Rn. The values of R0 and Rn are not changed.
@(disp,GBR)	GBR indirect with displacement	A memory location. The start address of the memory access is given by: the value of GBR plus the displacement (disp). The value of GBR is not changed.
@(R0,GBR)	GBR indirect with index	A memory location. The start address of the memory access is given by: the value of GBR plus the value of R0.  The values of GBR and R0 are not changed.
@(disp,PC)	PC relative with displacement	A memory location. The start address of the memory access is given by: the value of the PC plus the displacement (disp).

Notes 1 to 3 = See next page.

**Table 3-1** Addressing Modes (cont)

Addressing Mode	Name	Description
symbol	PC relative specified with symbol	[When used as the operand of a branch instruction] The symbol directly indicates the destination address. The assembler derives a displacement (disp) from the symbol and the value of the PC, using the formula: disp = symbol - PC.
		[When used as the operand of a data move instruction] A memory location. The symbol expresses the starting address of the memory accessed. The assembler derives a displacement (disp) from the symbol and the value of the PC, using the formula: disp = symbol - PC.
		[When used as the operand of an instruction that specifies the RS or RE register (LDRS or LDRE instruction)] Refer to Programmer's Guide, 9.3, "Notes on Executable Instructions."
#imm	Immediate	Expresses a constant.

#### Notes: 1. Increment

The amount of the increment is 1 when the operation size is a byte, 2 when the operation size is a word (two bytes), and 4 when the operation size is a long word (four bytes).

# 2. Decrement

The amount of the decrement is 1 when the operation size is a byte, 2 when the operation size is a word, and 4 when the operation size is a long word.

# 3. Displacement

A displacement is the distance between two points. In this assembly-language, the unit of displacement values is in bytes.

The values that can be used for the displacement vary with the addressing mode and the operation size.

**Table 3-2** Allowed Displacement Values

Addressing Mode	Displacement*
@(disp,Rn)	When the operation size is byte (B): H'00000000 to H'0000000F (0 to 15)
	When the operation size is word (W): H'00000000 to H'0000001E (0 to 30)
	When the operation size is long word (L): H'00000000 to H'0000003C (0 to 60)
@(disp,GBR)	When the operation size is byte (B): H'00000000 to H'000000FF (0 to 255)
	When the operation size is word (W): H'00000000 to H'000001FE (0 to 510)
	When the operation size is long word (L): H'00000000 to H'000003FC (0 to 1020)
@(disp,PC)	[When used as an operand of a move instruction]
	When the operation size is word (W): H'00000000 to H'000001FE (0 to 510)
	When the operation size is long word (L): H'00000000 to H'000003FC (0 to 1020)
	[When used as an operand of an instruction that sets the RS or RE register (LDRS or LDRE)]
	H'FFFFF00 to H'000000FE (-256 to 254)

Note: Units are bytes, numbers in parentheses are decimal.

**Table 3-2** Allowed Displacement Values (cont)

# **Addressing Mode Displacement\*** [When used as a branch instruction operand] symbol When used as an operand for a conditional branch instruction (BT, BF, BF/S, or BT/S): {H'00000000 to H'000000FF (0 to 255) {H'FFFFFF00 to H'FFFFFFF (-256 to -1) When used as an operand for an unconditional branch instruction (BRA or BSR) {H'00000000 to H'00000FFF (0 to 4095) {H'FFFFF000 to H'FFFFFFF (-4096 to -1) [When used as the operand of a data move instruction] When the operation size is word (W): H'00000000 to H'000001FE (0 to 510) When the operation size is long word (L): H'00000000 to H'000003FC (0 to 1020) [When used as an operand of an instruction that sets the RS or RE register (LDRS or LDRE)] H'FFFFF00 to H'000000FE (-256 to 254)

Note: Units are bytes, numbers in parentheses are decimal.

# Reference:

#### LDRS, LDRE

→ Programmer's Guide, 9.3, "Notes on Executable Instructions"

The values that can be used for immediate values vary with the executable instruction.

**Table 3-3** Allowed Immediate Values

Executable Instruction	Immediate Value
TST, AND, OR, XOR	H'00000000 to H'000000FF (0 to 255)
MOV	{H'00000000 to H'000000FF (0 to 255) {H'FFFFFF80 to H'FFFFFFFF (-128 to -1) *
ADD, CMP/EQ	(H'000000000 to H'000000FF (0 to 255) (H'FFFFFF80 to H'FFFFFFFF (-128 to -1) *
TRAPA	H'00000000 to H'000000FF (0 to 255)
SETRC	H'00000001 to H'000000FF (1 to 255)

Note: Values in the range H'FFFFFF80 to H'FFFFFFF can be written as positive decimal values.

#### **Reference:**

# **SETRC**

→ Programmer's Guide, 9.3, "Notes on Executable Instructions"

#### **CAUTION!**

The assembler corrects the value of displacements under certain conditions.

Condition	Type of Correction
When the operation size is a word and the displacement is not a multiple of 2	<ul> <li>→ The lower bit of the displacement is</li> <li>→ discarded, resulting in the value being a</li> <li>→ multiple of 2.</li> </ul>
When the operation size is a long word and the displacement is not a multiple of 4	<ul> <li>→ The lower 2 bits of the displacement are</li> <li>→ discarded, resulting in the value being a</li> <li>→ multiple of 4.</li> </ul>
When the displacement of the branch instruction is not a multiple of 2	<ul> <li>→ The lower bit of the displacement is</li> <li>→ discarded, resulting in the value being a</li> <li>→ multiple of 2.</li> </ul>

Be sure to take this correction into consideration when using operands of the mode @(disp,Rn), @(disp,GBR), and @(disp,PC).

# Example:

The assembler corrects the 63 to be 60, and generates object code identical to that for the statement MOV.L @(60,PC),R0, and warning number 870 occurs.

# 3.2 Notes on Executable Instructions

# 3.2.1 Notes on the Operation Size

The operation sizes that can be specified vary with the mnemonic and the addressing mode combination.

# SH1 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations:

Table 3-4 shows the SH1 allowable executable instruction and operation size combinations.

**Table 3-4** SH1 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 1)

1. Data Move Instructions		Ope	ration	Sizes		
Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	В	w	L	Default when Omitted	_
MOV	#imm,Rn	0	Δ	Δ	В	*1
MOV	@(disp,PC),Rn	×	0	0	L	_
MOV	symbol,Rn	×	0	0	L	_
MOV	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L	
MOV	Rn,@Rm	0	0	0	L	_
MOV	@Rn,Rm	0	0	0	L	_
MOV	Rn,@-Rm	0	0	0	L	
MOV	@Rn+,Rm	0	0	0	L	
MOV	R0,@(disp,Rn)	0	0	0	L	_
MOV	Rn,@(disp,Rm)	×	×	0	L	*2
MOV	@(disp,Rn),R0	0	0	0	L	
MOV	@(disp,Rn),Rm	×	×	0	L	*3
MOV	Rn,@(R0,Rm)	0	0	0	L	_
MOV	@(R0,Rn),Rm	0	0	0	L	
MOV	R0,@(disp,GBR)	0	0	0	L	
MOV	@(disp,GBR),R0	0	0	0	L	_
MOVA	#imm,R0	×	×	Δ	L	_
MOVA	@(disp,PC),R0	×	×	0	L	_
MOVA	symbol,R0	×	×	0	L	_

Notes: See next page.

Table 3-4 SH1 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 1) (cont)

#### 1. Data Move Instructions

### **Operation Sizes**

Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	В	w	L	Default when Omitted
MOVT	Rn	×	×	0	L
SWAP	Rn,Rm	0	0	×	W
XTRCT	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L

# Symbol meanings:

Rn, Rm A general register (R0 to R15)

SR Satus register
VBR Vector base register
PR Procedure register

R0 General register R0 (when only R0 can be specified)

GBR Global base register
MACH, MACL Accumulator register
PC Program counter
imm An immediate value

symbol A symbol

disp A displacement value

B Byte
L Long word (4 bytes)
W Word (2 bytes)
Valid specification
× Invalid specification:

The assembler regards instructions with this combination as the specification being omitted.

The assembler regards them as extended instructions.

Notes: 1. In size selection mode, the assembler selects the operation size according to the imm value.

- 2. In this case Rn must be one of R1 to R15.
- 3. In this case Rm must be one of R1 to R15.

### **References:**

#### Extended instructions

→ Programmer's Guide, 8.2, "Extended Instructions Related to Automatic Literal Pool Generation"

#### Size selection mode

→ Programmer's Guide, 8.3, "Size Mode for Automatic Literal Pool Generation"

 Table 3-4
 SH1 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 2)

# 2. Arithmetic Operation Instructions

**Operation Sizes** 

Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	В	w	L	Default when Omitted
ADD	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
ADD	#imm,Rn	×	×	0	L
ADDC	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
ADDV	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
CMP/EQ	#imm,R0	×	×	0	L
CMP/EQ	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
CMP/HS	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
CMP/GE	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
CMP/HI	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
CMP/GT	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
CMP/PZ	Rn	×	×	0	L
CMP/PL	Rn	×	×	0	L
CMP/STR	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
DIV1	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
DIV0S	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
DIV0U	(no operands)	×	×	×	_
EXTS	Rn,Rm	0	0	×	W
EXTU	Rn,Rm	0	0	×	W
MAC	@Rn+,@Rm+	×	0	×	W
MULS	Rn,Rm	×	0	0	L
MULU	Rn,Rm	×	0	0	,
NEG	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
NEGC	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
SUB	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
SUBC	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
SUBV	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L

Note: The object code generated when W is specified is the same as that generated when L is specified.

 Table 3-4
 SH1 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 3)

# 3. Logic Operation Instructions

# **Operation Sizes**

		_			
Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	В	w	L	Default when Omitted
AND	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
AND	#imm,R0	×	×	0	L
AND	#imm,@(R0,GBR)	0	×	×	В
NOT	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
OR	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
OR	#imm,R0	×	×	0	L
OR	#imm,@(R0,GBR)	0	×	×	В
TAS	@Rn	0	×	×	В
TST	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
TST	#imm,R0	×	×	0	L
TST	#imm,@(R0,GBR)	0	×	×	В
XOR	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
XOR	#imm,R0	×	×	0	L
XOR	#imm,@(R0,GBR)	0	×	×	В

**Table 3-4** SH1 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 4)

### 4. Shift Instructions

### **Operation Sizes**

Addressing Mode	В	w	L	Default when Omitted
Rn	×	×	0	L
Rn	×	×	0	L
Rn	×	×	0	L
Rn	×	×	0	L
Rn	×	×	0	L
Rn	×	×	0	L
Rn	×	×	0	L
Rn	×	×	0	L
Rn	×	×	0	L
Rn	×	×	0	L
Rn	×	×	0	L
Rn	×	×	0	L
Rn	×	×	0	L
Rn	×	×	0	L
	Rn R	Rn       ×         Rn       ×	Rn       x       x         Rn       x       x	Rn       x       x       0         Rn       x       x       0

**Table 3-4** SH1 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 5)

### 5. Branch Instructions

### **Operation Sizes**

Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	е	В	w	L	Default when Omitted
BF	symbol		×	×	×	_
ВТ	symbol		×	×	×	_
BRA	symbol		×	×	×	_
BSR	symbol		×	×	×	_
JMP	@Rn		×	×	×	_
JSR	@Rn		×	×	×	_
RTS		(no operands)	×	×	×	_

 Table 3-4
 SH1 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 6)

## 6. System Control Instructions

## **Operation Sizes**

Mnemonic	Addressing Mode		В.	w	L	Default when Omitted
CLRT		o operands)	×	×	×	_
CLRMAC	(r	o operands)	×	×	×	_
LDC	Rn,SR		×	×	0	L
LDC	Rn,GBR		×	×	0	L.
LDC	Rn,VBR		×	×	0	L
LDC	@Rn+,SR		×	×	0	L
LDC	@Rn+,GBR		×	×	0	L
LDC	@Rn+,VBR		×	×	0	L
LDS	Rn,MACH		×	×	0	L,
LDS	Rn,MACL		×	×	0	L,
LDS	Rn,PR		×	×	0	L,
LDS	@Rn+,MACH		×	×	0	L,
LDS	@Rn+,MACL		×	×	0	L,
LDS	@Rn+,PR		×	×	0	L
NOP	(r	o operands)	×	×	×	_
RTE	(r	o operands)	×	×	×	_
SETT	(r	o operands)	×	×	×	_
SLEEP	(r	o operands)	×	×	×	_
STC	SR,Rn		×	×	0	L
STC	GBR,Rn		×	×	0	L
STC	VBR,Rn		×	×	0	L
STC	SR,@-Rn		×	×	0	L
STC	GBR,@-Rn		×	×	0	L
STC	VBR,@-Rn		×	×	0	L
STS	MACH,Rn		×	×	0	L
STS	MACL,Rn		×	×	0	L
STS	PR,Rn		×	×	0	L
STS	MACH,@-Rn		×	×	0	L
STS	MACL,@-Rn		×	×	0	L
STS	PR,@-Rn		×	×	0	L
TRAPA	#imm		×	×	0	L

### **SH2** Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations:

Table 3-5 shows the executable instruction and operation size combinations for the SH2 instructions added to those of the SH1.

**Table 3-5** SH2 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 1)

#### 1. Arithmetic Operation Instructions **Operation Sizes** Default when **Mnemonic Addressing Mode** В W L **Omitted** MAC @Rn+,@Rm+ W × 0 0 MUL Rn,Rm × 0 L × **DMULS** Rn,Rm × × 0 L **DMULU** Rn,Rm × 0 L X DT Rn × X X

Table 3-5 SH2 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 2)

2. Branch Ins	2. Branch Instructions		Operation Sizes				
Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	В	w	L	Default when Omitted		
BF/S	symbol	×	×	×	_		
BT/S	symbol	×	×	×	_		
BRAF	Rn	×	×	×	_		
BSRF	Rn	×	×	×	<del></del>		

### **SH3 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations:**

Table 3-6 shows the executable instruction and operation size combinations for the SH3 instructions added to those of the SH2.

Table 3-6 SH3 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 1)

1. Data Move Instructions		Ope			
Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	В	w	L	Default when Omitted
PREF	@Rn	×	×	×	_

Table 3-6 SH3 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 2)

### 2. Shift Instructions

### **Operation Sizes**

Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	В	w	L	Default when Omitted
SHAD	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L
SHLD	Rn,Rm	×	×	0	L

Table 3-6 SH3 Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 3)

### 3. System Control Instructions

## **Operation Sizes**

Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	В	w	L	Default when Omitted
CLRS	(No operands)	×	×	×	_
SETS	(No operands)	×	×	×	_
LDC	Rm,SSR	×	×	0	L
LDC	Rm,SPC	×	×	0	L
LDC	Rm,Rn_BANK	×	×	0	L
LDC	@Rm+,SSR	×	×	0	L
LDC	@Rm+,SPC	×	×	0	L
LDC	@Rm+,Rn_BANK	×	×	0	L
STC	SSR,Rn	×	×	0	L
STC	SPC,Rn	×	×	0	L
STC	Rm_BANK,Rn	×	×	0	L
STC	SSR,@-Rn	×	×	0	L
STC	SPC,@-Rn	×	×	0	L
STC	Rm_BANK,@-Rn	×	×	0	L
LDTLB	(No operands)	×	×	×	_

Symbol meanings:

Rn\_BANK Bank general register
SSR Save status register
SPC Save program counter

### **SH3E Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations:**

Table 3-7 shows the executable instruction and operation size combinations for the SH3E instructions added to those of the SH3.

 Table 3-7
 SH3E Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 1)

### 1. Data Move Instructions

### **Operation Sizes**

						Default when
Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	В	W	L	S	Omitted
FLDI0	FRn	×	×	×	0	S
FLDI1	FRn	×	×	×	0	S
FMOV	@Rm,FRn	×	×	×	0	S
FMOV	FRm,@Rn	×	×	×	0	S
FMOV	@Rm+,FRn	×	×	×	0	S
FMOV	FRm,@-Rn	×	×	×	0	S
FMOV	@(R0,Rm),FRn	×	×	×	0	S
FMOV	FRm,@(R0,Rn)	×	×	×	0	S
FMOV	FRm,FRn	×	×	×	0	S

Symbol meanings:

FRm,FRn Floating-point register

FR0 FR0 floating-point register

FPUL FPU low register

FPSCR FPU status control register S Single precision (4 bytes)

**Table 3-7** SH3E Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 2)

2. Arithmetic Operation Instructions **Operation Sizes** Default when **Addressing Mode** Omitted Mnemonic В W S L **FABS** FRn S 0 × × X FADD FRm,FRn S  $\times$ ×  $\times$ 0 FCMP/EQ FRm,FRn S × × 0  $\times$ FCMP/GT  $\mathsf{FRm}, \mathsf{FRn}$ S  $\times$  $\times$ X О **FDIV** S FRm,FRn 0 × × × FR0,FRm,FRn **FMAC** S × × × 0 **FMUL** FRm,FRn S × ×  $\times$ 0

×

X

×

X

×

 $\times$ 

X

×

S

S

S

0

0

0

 Table 3-7
 SH3E Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 3)

3. System Co	ontrol Instructions	Оре	ration			
Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	В	w	L	s	Default when Omitted
FLDS	FRm,FPUL	×	×	×	0	S
FLOAT	FPUL,FRn	×	×	×	0	S
FSTS	FPUL,FRn	×	×	×	0	S
FTRC	FRm,FPUL	×	×	×	0	S
LDS	Rm,FPUL	×	×	0	×	L
LDS	@Rm+,FPUL	×	×	0	×	L
LDS	Rm,FPSCR	×	×	0	×	L
LDS	@Rm+,FPSCR	×	×	0	×	L
STS	FPUL,Rn	×	×	0	×	L
STS	FPUL,@-Rn	×	×	0	×	L
STS	FPSCR,Rn	×	×	0	×	L
STS	FPSCR,@-Rn	×	×	0	×	L

**FNEG** 

**FSQRT** 

**FSUB** 

FRn

FRn

FRm,FRn

### **SH-DSP Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations:**

Table 3-8 shows the executable instruction and operation size combinations for the SH-DSP instructions added to those of the SH2.

**Table 3-8** SH-DSP Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 1)

#### 1. Repeat Control Instructions

### **Operation Sizes**

Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	В	w	L	Default when Omitted
LDRS	@(disp,PC)	×	×	0	L
LDRS	symbol	×	×	0	L
LDRE	@(disp,PC)	×	×	0	L
LDRE	symbol	×	×	0	L
SETRC	Rn	×	×	×	_
SETRC	#imm	×	×	×	_

Symbol meanings:

MOD Modulo register
RS Repeat start register
RE Repeat end register
DSR DSP status register

A0 DSP data register (A0, X0, X1, Y0, or Y1 can be specified.)

**Table 3-8** SH-DSP Executable Instruction and Operation Size Combinations (Part 2)

### 2. System Control Instructions

### **Operation Sizes**

Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	В	w	L	Default when Omitted
LDC	Rn,MOD	×	×	0	L
LDC	Rn,RS	×	×	0	L
LDC	Rn,RE	×	×	0	L
LDC	@Rn+,MOD	×	×	0	L
LDC	@Rn+,RS	×	×	0	L
LDC	@Rn+,RE	×	×	0	L
LDS	Rn,DSR	×	×	0	L
LDS	Rn,A0	×	×	0	L
LDS	@Rn+,DSR	×	×	0	L
LDS	@Rn+,A0	×	×	0	L
STC	MOD,Rn	×	×	0	L
STC	RS,Rn	×	×	0	L
STC	RE,Rn	×	×	0	L
STC	MOD,@-Rn	×	×	0	L
STC	RS,@-Rn	×	×	0	L
STC	RE,@-Rn	×	×	0	L
STS	DSR,Rn	×	×	0	L
STS	A0,Rn	×	×	0	L
STS	DSR,@-Rn	×	×	0	L
STS	A0,@-Rn	×	×	0	L
_	•				

## 3.2.2 Notes on Delayed Branch Instructions

The unconditional branch instructions are delayed branch instructions. SH microprocessors execute the delay slot instruction (the instruction directly following a branch instruction in memory) before executing the delayed branch instruction.

If an instruction inappropriate for a delay slot is specified, the assembler issues error number 150 or 151.

Table 3-9 shows the relationship between the delayed branch instructions and the delay slot instructions.

 Table 3-9
 Relationship between Delayed Branch Instructions and Delay Slot Instructions

### **Delayed Branch**

<b>Delay Slot</b>		BF/S	BT/S	BRAF	BSRF	BRA	BSR	JMP	JSR	RTS	RTE
BF		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
BT		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
BF/S		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
BT/S		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
BRAF		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
BSRF		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
BRA		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
BSR		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
JMP		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
JSR		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
RTS		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
RTE		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
TRAPA		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
MOV	@(disp,PC),Rn	Ø	Ø	Ø	Ø	Ø	Ø	Ø	Ø	Ø	Ø
	symbol,Rn	Ø	Ø	×	×	Ø	Ø	×	×	×	×
MOVA	@(disp,PC),R0	Ø	Ø	Ø	Ø	Ø	Ø	Ø	Ø	Ø	Ø
	symbol,R0	Ø	Ø	×	×	Ø	Ø	×	×	×	×
Extended instructions	MOV.L #imm,Rn	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
	MOV.W #imm,Rn	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
	MOVA #imm,R0	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Any other ins	struction	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Symbol meanings:

- O Normal, i.e., the assembler generates the specified object code.
- Ø Warning 871

Note on the value of PC: PC =  $\frac{\text{destination address for the delayed}}{\text{branch instruction}} + 2$ 

The assembler generates the specified object code.

× Error 150 or 151

The instruction specified is inappropriate as a delay slot instruction.

The assembler generates object code with a NOP instruction (H'0009).

#### **CAUTION!**

If the delayed branch instruction and the delay slot instruction are coded in different sections, the assembler does not check the validity of the delay slot instruction.

#### **Reference:**

**Extended Instructions** 

→ Programmer's Guide, 8.2, "Extended Instructions Related to Automatic Literal Pool Generation"

#### 3.2.3 Notes on Address Calculations

When the operand addressing mode is PC relative with displacement, i.e., @(disp,PC), the value of PC must be taken into account in coding. The value of PC can vary depending on certain conditions.

#### (1) Normal Case

The value of PC is the first address in the currently executing instruction plus 4 bytes. Examples: (Consider the state when a MOV instruction is being executed at absolute address H'00001000.)

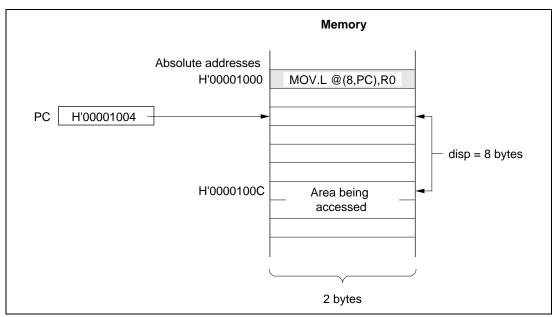


Figure 3-1 Address Calculation Example (Normal Case)

### (2) During the Delay Slot Instruction

The value of PC is <u>destination address for the delayed branch instruction plus 2 bytes.</u>

Examples: (Consider the state when a MOV instruction is being executed at absolute address H'00001000.)

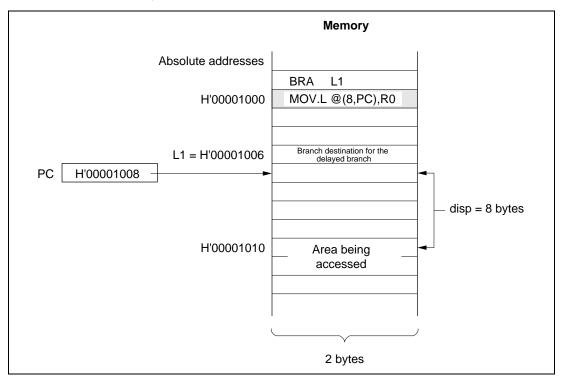


Figure 3-2 Address Calculation Example (When the Value of PC Differs Due to a Branch)

### **Supplement:**

When the operand is the PC relative specified with the symbol, the assembler derives the displacement taking account of the value of PC when generating the object code.

### (3) During the Execution of Either a MOV.L @(disp,PC),Rn or a MOVA @(disp,PC),R0

When the value of PC is not a multiple of 4 SH microprocessors correct the value by discarding the lower 2 bits when calculating addresses.

#### Examples:

1. When SH microprocessor corrects the value of PC (Consider the state when a MOV instruction is being executed at address H'00001002.)

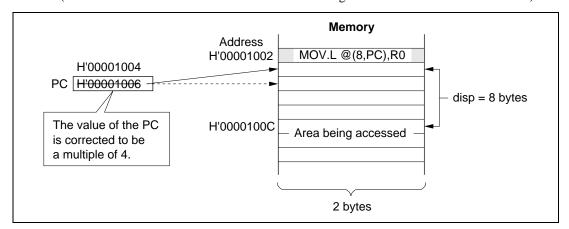


Figure 3-3 Address Calculation Example (When SH Microprocessor Corrects the Value of PC)

2. When SH microprocessor does not correct the value of PC (Consider the state when a MOV instruction is being executed at address H'00001000.)

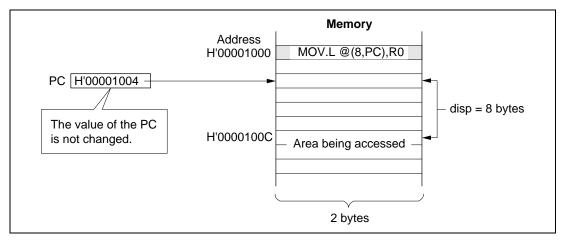


Figure 3-4 Address Calculation Example (When SH Microprocessor Does Not Correct the Value of PC)

## **Supplement:**

When the operand is the PC relative specified with the symbol, the assembler derives the displacement taking account of the value of PC when generating the object code.

# Section 4 Assembler Directives

## **4.1** Overview of the Assembler Directives

The assembler directives are instructions that the assembler interprets and executes. Table 4-1 lists the assembler directives provided by this assembler.

**Table 4-1** Assembler Directives

Туре	Mnemonic	Function
Target CPU	.CPU	Specifies the target CPU.
Section and the location	.SECTION	Declares a section.
counter	.ORG	Sets the value of the location counter.
	.ALIGN	Corrects the value of the location counter.
Symbols	.EQU	Sets a symbol value (reset not allowed).
	.ASSIGN	Sets a symbol value (reset allowed).
	.REG	Defines the alias of a register name.
	.FREG	Defines a floating-point register name.
Data and data area	.DATA	Reserves integer data.
reservation	.DATAB	Reserves integer data blocks.
	.SDATA	Reserves character string data.
	.SDATAB	Reserves character string data blocks.
	.SDATAC	Reserves character string data (with length).
	.SDATAZ	Reserves character string data (with zero terminator).
	.FDATA	Reserves floating-point data.
	.FDATAB	Reserves floating-point data blocks.
	.XDATA	Reserves fixed-point data.
	.RES	Reserves data area.
	.SRES	Reserves character string data area.
	.SRESC	Reserves character string data area (with length).
	.SRESZ	Reserves character string data area (with zero terminator).
	.FRES	Reserves floating-point data area.

**Table 4-1** Assembler Directives (cont)

Туре	Mnemonic	Function
Export and import symbol	.EXPORT	Declares export symbols.
	.IMPORT	Declares import symbols.
	.GLOBAL	Declares export and import symbols.
Object modules	.OUTPUT	Controls object module output.
	.DEBUG	Controls the output of symbolic debug information.
	.ENDIAN	Selects big endian or little endian.
	.LINE	Changes line number.
Assemble listing	.PRINT	Controls assemble listing output.
	.LIST	Controls the output of the source program listing.
	.FORM	Sets the number of lines and columns in the assemble listing.
	.HEADING	Sets the header for the source program listing.
	.PAGE	Inserts a new page in the source program listing.
	.SPACE	Outputs blank lines to the source program listing.
Other directives	.PROGRAM	Sets the name of the object module.
	.RADIX	Sets the radix in which integer constants with no radix specifier are interpreted.
	.END	Declares the end of the source program.

## 4.2 Assembler Directive Reference

### **4.2.1** Target CPU Assembler Directive

This assembler provides the following assembler directive concerned with the target CPU.

**.CPU** Specifies the target CPU.

### .CPU Target CPU Specification

### **Syntax**

 $\Delta$ .CPU $\Delta$ <target CPU>

## **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .CPU mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the target CPU.

Specification	Target CPU
SH1	Assembles program for SH1
SH2	Assembles program for SH2
SH3	Assembles program for SH3
SH3E	Assembles program for SH3E
SHDSP	Assembles program for SH-DSP

This directive determines the target CPU. If it is omitted, the CPU specified by the SHCPU environment variable becomes valid.

Reference: SHCPU environment variable

→ User's Guide, 1.3, "SHCPU Environment Variable"

### **Description**

- 1. .CPU is the assembler directive that specifies the target CPU for which the source program is assembled.
- 2. The following CPU can be selected:

SH1 SH2 SH3 SH3E SHDSP

- 3. Specify this directive at the beginning of the source program. If it is not specified at the beginning, an error will occur. However, directives related to assembly listing can be written before this directive.
- 4. When several .CPU directives are specified, only the first specification becomes valid.
- 5. The assembler gives priority to target CPU specification in the order of -CPU, .CPU, and the SHCPU environment variable.

### **Coding Example**

```
.CPU SH2

.SECTION A, CODE, ALIGN=4

MOV.L R0,R1

MOV.L R0,R2
```

Assembles program for SH2.

```
Reference: -CPU \rightarrow User's Guide, 2.2.1, "CPU Command Line Option" -CPU
```

## **4.2.2** Section and Location Counter Assembler Directives

This assembler provides the following assembler directives concerned with sections and the location counter.

.SECTION	Declares a section.
.ORG	Sets the value of the location counter.
.ALIGN	Adjusts the value of the location counter to a multiple of the boundary alignment value.

#### .SECTION Section Declaration

### **Syntax**

```
Ø.SECTIONØ<section name> [,<section attribute>
    [,{LOCATE= <start address>|ALIGN=<boundary alignment value>}]]
```

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .SECTION mnemonic.

- 3. Operands
  - First operand: the section name

The rules for section names are the same as the rules for symbols.

References: Naming sections

→ Programmer's Guide, 1.3.2, "Coding of Symbols"

— Second operand: the section attribute

Attribute	Section Type
CODE	Code section
DATA	Data section
STACK	Stack section
COMMON	Common section
DUMMY	Dummy section

The shaded section indicates the default value when the specifier is omitted.

When the specification is omitted, the section will be a code section.

— Third operand: start address or boundary alignment value

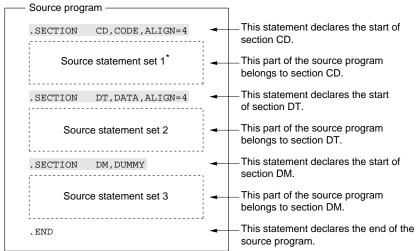
Specification	Section Type
LOCATE = <start address=""></start>	Absolute address section
ALIGN = <box>doundary alignment value&gt;</box>	Relative address section
No specification	Relative address section (boundary alignment value = 4)

The specification determines whether the section type will be an absolute address section or a relative address section.

#### **Description**

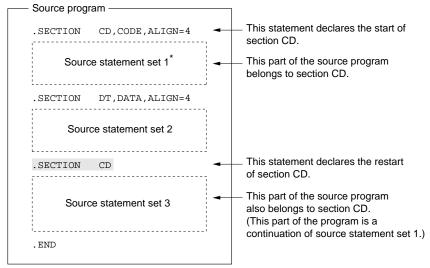
1. .SECTION is the section declaration assembler directive.

A section is a part of a program, and the linkage editor regards it as a unit of processing. The following describes section declaration using the simple examples shown below.



Note: This example assumes that the .SECTION directive does not appear in any of the source statement sets 1 to 3.

2. It is possible to redeclare (and thus restart, i.e., re-enter) a section that was previously declared in the same file. The following is a simple example of section restart.



Note: This example assumes that the .SECTION directive does not appear in any of the source statement sets 1 to 3.

#### **CAUTION!**

When using the .SECTION directive to restart a section, the second and third operands must be omitted. (The original specifications when first declaring the section remain valid.)

3. Use LOCATE = <start address> as the third operand when starting an absolute address section. The start address is the absolute address of the start of that section.

The start address must be specified as follows:

- The specification must be an absolute value, and,
- Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values allowed for the start address are from H'00000000 to H'FFFFFFF. (From - 2,147,483,648 to 4,294,967,295 in decimal.)

The boundary alignment value must be specified as follows:

- The specification must be an absolute value, and.
- Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values allowed for the boundary alignment value are powers of 2, e.g.  $2^0$ ,  $2^1$ ,  $2^2$ , ...,  $2^{31}$ . For code sections, the values must be 4 or larger powers of 2, e.g.  $2^2$ ,  $2^3$ ,  $2^4$ , ...,  $2^{31}$ .

- 5. The assembler provides a default section for the following cases.
  - The use of executable instructions when no section has been declared.
  - The use of data reservation assembler directives when no section has been declared.
  - The use of the .ALIGN directive when no section has been declared.
  - The use of the .ORG directive when no section has been declared.
  - Reference to the location counter when no section has been declared.
  - The use of statements consisting of only the label field when no section has been declared.

The default section is the following section.

- Section name: I
- Section type: Code section

Relative address section (with a boundary alignment value of 4)

## **Coding Example**

SECTIO	.ALIGN .DATA.L	4 H'111111111 IGN=4	; This section of the program belongs to the default section P. ; The default section P is a code section, and is a relative ; address section with a boundary alignment value of 4.
.SECTIC	MOV MOV ————————————————————————————————	R0,R1 R0,R2 CATE=H'00001000	; This section of the program belongs to the section CD. ; The section CD is a code section, and is a relative address ; section with a boundary alignment value of 4.
x1:	. DATA.L . DATA.L	H'22222222 H'33333333	; This section of the program belongs to the section DT. ; The section DT is a data section, and is an absolute address ; section with a start address of H'00001000.

Note: This example assumes the .SECTION directive does not appear in the parts indicated by " $\sim$ ".

#### .ORG Location-Counter-Value Setting

#### **Syntax**

Ø.ORGØ<location-counter-value>

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .ORG mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the new value for the location counter.

#### **Description**

86

- 1. .ORG is an directive that sets the value of the location counter. The .ORG directive is used to place executable instructions or data at a specific address.
- 2. The location-counter-value must be specified as follows:
  - The specification must be an absolute value or an address within the section, and.
  - Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values allowed for the location-counter-value are from H'00000000 to H'FFFFFFF. (From -2,147,483,648 to 4,294,967,295 in decimal.)

When the location-counter-value is specified with an absolute value, the following condition must hold:

<location-counter-value> ≥ <section start address> (when compared as unsigned values)

- 3. The assembler handles the value of the location counter as follows.
  - The value is regarded as an absolute address value within an absolute address section.
  - The value is regarded as a relative address value (relative distance from the section head) within a relative address section.

### **Coding Example**

.SECTION DT,DATA,LOCATE=H'FFFF0000

.DATA.L H'11111111

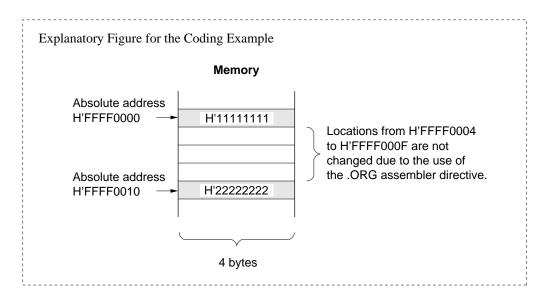
.ORG H'FFFF0010 ; This statement sets the value of the location

counter.

.DATA.L H'22222222; The integer data H'22222222 is stored at

; absolute address H'FFFF0010.

~



#### .ALIGN Location-Counter-Value Correction

#### **Syntax**

Ø.ALIGNØ<boundary alignment value>

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .ALIGN mnemonic./

3. Operands

Enter the boundary alignment value.

#### **Description**

- 1. .ALIGN is an directive that corrects the location-counter-value to be a multiple of the boundary alignment value. Executable instructions and data can be allocated on specific boundary values (address multiples) by using the .ALIGN directive.
- 2. The boundary alignment value must be specified as follows:
  - The specification must be an absolute value,
  - Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values allowed for the boundary alignment value are powers of 2, e.g.  $2^0$ ,  $2^1$ ,  $2^2$ , ...,  $2^{31}$ . The boundary alignment value specified by .ALIGN directive must be less than or equal to the boundary alignment value specified by .SECTION directive.

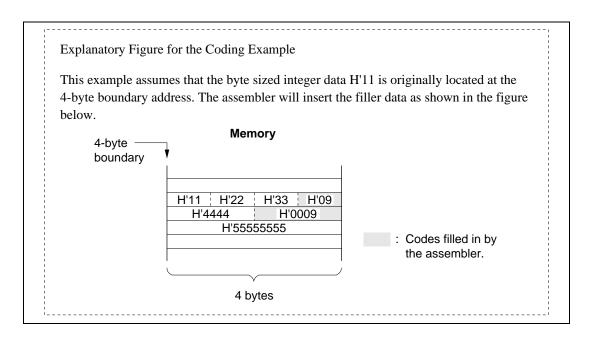
- When .ALIGN is used in a relative section the following must be satisfied:
   Boundary alignment value specified by .SECTION ≥ Boundary alignment value specified by .ALIGN
- 4. When .ALIGN is used in a code section, the assembler inserts NOP instructions in the object code\* to adjust the value of the location counter. Odd byte size areas are filled with H'09.

Note: This object code is not displayed in the assemble listing.

When .ALIGN is used in a data dummy, or stack section, the assembler only adjusts the value of the location counter, and does not fill in any object code in memory.

### **Coding Example**

```
.SECTION
             P,code
         .DATA.B
                      H'11
         .DATA.B
                      H'22
         .DATA.B
                      н′33
         . ALIGN
                                    ; This statement adjusts the value of the location
         .DATA.W
                      H'4444
                                    ; counter to be a multiple of 2.
                                    ; This statement adjusts the value of the location
         . ALIGN
                      H'55555555; counter to be a multiple of 4.
         .DATA.L
```



## **4.2.3** Symbol Handling Assembler Directives

This assembler provides the following assembler directives concerned with symbols.

.EQU	Sets a symbol value.
.ASSIGN	Sets and resets a symbol value.
.REG	Defines the alias of a register name.
.FREG	Defines a floating-point register name.

### .EQU Symbol Value Setting (Resetting Not Allowed)

### **Syntax**

<symbol>[:]Ø.EQUØ<symbol value>

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter the symbol to which a value is to be set.

2. Operation

Enter the .EQU mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the value to be set to the symbol.

### **Description**

1. .EQU is an assembler directive that sets a value to a symbol.

Symbols defined with the .EQU directive cannot be redefined.

- 2. The symbol value must be specified as follows:
  - The specification must be an absolute value, an address value, or an import symbol value\*

and,

— Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values allowed for the symbol value are from H'00000000 to H'FFFFFFF. (From - 2,147,483,648 to 4,294,967,295 in decimal.)

Note: An import value, import value + constant, or import value - constant can be specified.

## **Coding Example**

x1: .EQU 10 ; The value 10 is set to X1.

x2: .EQU 20 ; The value 20 is set to X2.

 $\mathtt{CMP}/\mathtt{EQ}$  #X1,R0 ; This is the same as CMP/EQ #10,R0.

BT LABEL1

 $\label{eq:cmp_eq} \texttt{CMP/EQ} \qquad \texttt{\#X2,R0} \qquad \text{;} \quad \text{This is the same as CMP/EQ \#20,R0.}$ 

BT LABEL2

~

### .ASSIGN Symbol Value Setting (Resetting Allowed)

#### **Syntax**

<symbol>[:]Ø.ASSIGNØ<symbol value>

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter the symbol to which a value is to be set.

2. Operation

Enter the .ASSIGN mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the value to be set to the symbol.

### **Description**

1. .ASSIGN is an assembler directive that sets a value to a symbol.

Symbols defined with the .ASSIGN directive can be redefined with the .ASSIGN directive.

- 2. The symbol value must be specified as follows:
  - The specification must be an absolute value or an address value, and,
  - Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values allowed for the symbol value are from H'00000000 to H'FFFFFFF. (From - 2,147,483,648 to 4,294,967,295 in decimal.)

- 3. Definitions with the .ASSIGN directive are valid from the point of the definition forward in the program.
- 4. Symbols defined with .ASSIGN have the following limitations:
  - They cannot be used as export or import symbols.
  - They cannot be referenced from the simulator/debugger.

## **Coding Example**

	~		
x1:	.ASSIGN	1	
x2:	.ASSIGN	2	
	CMP/EQ	#X1,R0	; This is the same as CMP/EQ #1,R0.
	BT	LABEL1	
	CMP/EQ	#X2,R0	; This is the same as CMP/EQ #2,R0.
	BT	LABEL2	
	~		
x1:	.ASSIGN	3	
x2:	.ASSIGN	4	
	CMP/EQ	#X1,R0	; This is the same as CMP/EQ #3,R0.
	BT	LABEL3	
	CMP/EQ	#X2,R0	; This is the same as CMP/EQ #4,R0.
	BF	LABEL4	

#### .REG Register Name Alias Definition

#### **Syntax**

```
<symbol>[:]Ø.REGØ<register name>
  or
<symbol>[:]Ø.REGØ(<register name>)
```

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter the symbol to be defined as the alias of a register name.

2. Operation

Enter the .REG mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the register name for which the alias of a register name is being defined.

### Description

1. .REG is the assembler directive that defines the alias of a register name.

The alias of a register name defined with .REG can be used in exactly the same manner as the original register name.

The alias of a register name defined with .REG cannot be redefined.

- 2. The alias of a register name can only be defined for the general registers (R0 to R15, and SP).
- 3. Definitions with the .REG directive are valid from the point of the definition forward in the program.
- 4. Symbols defined with .REG have the following limitations:
  - They cannot be used as import or export symbols.
  - They cannot be referenced from the simulator/debugger.

## **Coding Example**

~

MIN: .REG R10 MAX: .REG R11 ; This is the same as MOV #0,R10. #0,MIN MOV ; This is the same as MOV #99,R11. #99,MAX MOV CMP/HS MIN,R1 LABEL BF

> R1,MAX LABEL

BF

CMP/HS

### .FREG Floating-Point Register Name Alias Definition

#### **Syntax**

```
<symbol>[:]Ø.FREGØ<floating-point register name>
  or
<symbol>[:]Ø.FREGØ(<floating-point register name>)
```

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter the symbol to be defined as a floating-point register name.

2. Operation

Enter the .FREG mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the floating-point register name for which the alias is to be defined.

#### **Description**

1. .FREG is the assembler directive that defines the alias of a floating-point register name.

The alias of a floating-point register name defined with .FREG can be used in exactly the same manner as the original register name.

The alias of a floating-point register name defined with .FREG cannot be redefined.

- 2. The alias can only be defined for the floating-point registers (FR0 to FR15).
- 3. Definitions with the .FREG are valid from the point of the definition forward in the program.
- 4. Symbols defined with .FREG have the following limitations:
  - They cannot be used as import or export symbols.
  - They cannot be referenced from the simulator/debugger.

### **Coding Example**

```
MAX: FREG FR11

FMOV @FR1,MAX ; This is the same as FMOV @FR1,FR11.

FCMP/EQ MAX,FR2 ; This is the same as FCMP/EQ FR11,FR2.

BF LABEL
```

## 4.2.4 Data and Data Area Reservation Assembler Directives

This assembler provides the following assembler directives that are concerned with data and data area reservation.

.DATA	Reserves integer data.
.DATAB	Reserves integer data blocks.
.SDATA	Reserves character string data.
.SDATAB	Reserves character string data blocks.
.SDATAC	Reserves character string data (with length).
.SDATAZ	Reserves character string data (with zero terminator).
.FDATA	Reserves floating-point data.
.FDATAB	Reserves floating-point data block.
.XDATA	Reserves fixed-point data.
.RES	Reserves data area.
.SRES	Reserves character string data area.
.SRESC	Reserves character string data area (with length).
.SRESZ	Reserves character string data area (with zero terminator).
.FRES	Reserves floating-point data area.

#### .DATA Integer Data Reservation

#### **Syntax**

```
[<symbol>[:]]Ø.DATA[.<operation size>]Ø<integer data> [,<integer data>...]
```

## **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a reference symbol if required.

- 2. Operation
  - Mnemonic

Enter .DATA mnemonic.

- Operation size

Specifier	Data Size	
В	Byte	
W	Word (2 bytes)	
L	Long word (4 bytes)	

The shaded section indicates the default value when the specifier is omitted.

- The specifier determines the size of the reserved data.
- The long word size is used when the specifier is omitted.
- 3. Operands

Enter the values to be reserved as data in the operand field.

## **Description**

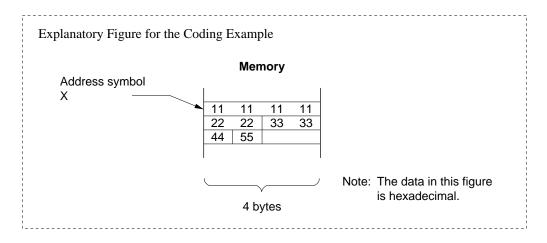
- 1. .DATA is the assembler directive that reserves integer data in memory.
- 2. Arbitrary values, including relative values and forward reference symbols, can be used to specify the integer data.
- 3. The range of values that can be specified as integer data varies with the operation size.

Operation Size	Integer Data Range*	
В	H'00000000 to H'000000FF (0 to 255) H'FFFFFF80 to H'FFFFFFFF (-128 to -1)	
W	H'00000000 to H'0000FFFF (0 to 65,535) H'FFFF8000 to H'FFFFFFFF (-32,768 to -1)	
L	H'00000000 to H'7FFFFFFF (0 to 4,294,967,295 H'80000000 to H'FFFFFFFF (-2,147,483,648 to	,

Note: Numbers in parentheses are decimal.

.ALIGN 4 ; (This statement adjusts the value of the location counter.)

X: .DATA.L H'11111111 ;
.DATA.W H'2222,H'3333 ; These statements reserve integer data.
.DATA.B H'44,H'55 ;



### .DATAB Integer Data Block Reservation

#### **Syntax**

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a reference symbol if required.

- 2. Operation
  - Mnemonic

Enter .DATAB mnemonic.

Operation size

Specifier	Data Size	
В	Byte	
W	Word (2 bytes)	
L	Long word (4 bytes)	

The shaded section indicates the default value when the specifier is omitted.

- The specifier determines the size of the reserved data.
- The long word size is used when the specifier is omitted.
- 3. Operands
  - First operand: block count

Enter the number of times the data value is repeated as the first operand.

- Second operand: integer data

Enter the value to be reserved as the second operand.

## **Description**

- 1. .DATAB is the assembler directive that reserves the specified number of integer data items consecutively in memory.
- 2. The block count must be specified as follows:
  - The specification must be an absolute value, and
  - Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

Arbitrary values, including relative values and forward reference symbols, can be used to specify the integer data.

3. The range of values that can be specified as the block size and as the integer data varies with the operation size.

Operation Size	Block Size Range*	
В	H'00000001 to H'FFFFFFF	(1 to 4,294,967,295)
W	H'00000001 to H'7FFFFFF	(1 to 2,147,483,647)
L	H'00000001 to H'3FFFFFF	(1 to 1,073,741,823)

Operation Size	Integer Data Range*		
В	H'000000000 to H'000000FF H'FFFFFF80 to H'FFFFFFFF	(0 to 255) (-128 to -1)	
W	H'00000000 to H'0000FFFF H'FFFF8000 to H'FFFFFFFF	(0 to 65,535) (-32,768 to -1)	
L	H'00000000 to H'7FFFFFFF H'80000000 to H'FFFFFFFF	(0 to 4,294,967,295) (-2,147,483,648 to -1)	

Note: Numbers in parentheses are decimal.

~

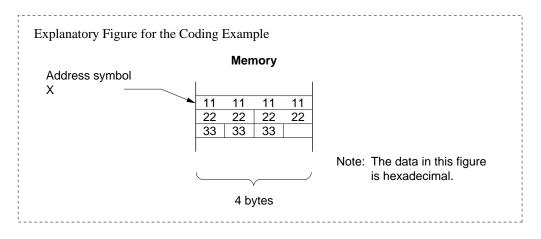
. ALIGN 4 ; (This statement adjusts the value of the incation counter.)

X: .DATAB.L 1,H'11111111

.DATAB.W 2, H' 2222 ; This statement reserves two blocks of integer

.DATAB.B 3,H'33 ; data.

 $\sim$ 



### .SDATA Character String Data Reservation

### **Syntax**

[<symbol>[:]]Ø.SDATAØ"<character string>"[,"<character string>"...]

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a reference symbol if required.

2. Operation

Enter the .SDATA mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the character string(s) to be reserved.

## **Description**

.SDATA is the assembler directive that reserves character string data in memory.
 Reference: Character strings → Programmer's Guide, 1.7, "Character Strings"

2. A control character can be appended to a character string.

The syntax for this notation is as follows.

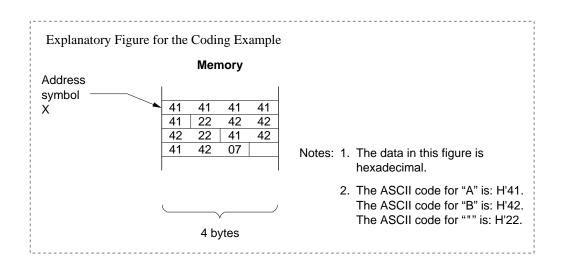
"<character string>"<<ASCII code for a control character>>

The ASCII code for a control character must be specified as follows.

- The specification must be an absolute value, and,
- Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

.ALIGN 4 ; (This statement adjusts the value of ; the location counter.)

X: .SDATA "AAAAA" ; This statement reserves character string data.
.SDATA ""BBB""" ; The character string in this example includes ; double quotation marks.
.SDATA "ABAB"<H'07> ; The character string in this example has ; a control character appended.



#### .SDATAB Character String Data Blocks Reservation

#### **Syntax**

[<symbol>[:]]Ø.SDATABØ<block count>,"<character string>"

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a reference symbol if required.

2. Operation

Enter the .SDATAB mnemonic.

- 3. Operands
  - First operand: <block count>

Enter the number of character strings as the first operand.

- Second operand: <character string>

Enter the character string to be reserved as the second operand.

#### **Description**

1. .SDATAB is the assembler directive that reserves the specified number of character strings consecutively in memory.

Reference: Character strings  $\rightarrow$  Programmer's Guide, 1.7, "Character Strings"

- 2. The <block count> must be specified as follows:
  - The specification must be an absolute value, and.
  - Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

A value of 1 or larger must be specified as the block count.

The maximum value of the block count depends on the length of the character string data.

(The length of the character string data multiplied by the block count must be less than or equal to H'FFFFFFF (4,294,967,295) bytes.)

3. A control character can be appended to a character string.

The syntax for this notation is as follows.

"<character string>"<<ASCII code for a control character>>

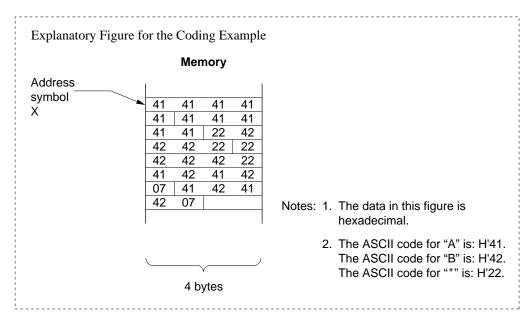
The ASCII code for a control character must be specified as follows.

- The specification must be an absolute value,
  - and
- Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

~

	$\sim$		
	.ALIGN	4	<ul><li>; (This statement adjusts the value of the</li><li>; location counter.)</li></ul>
х:	.SDATAB	2,"AAAAA"	<ul><li>7 This statement reserves two character</li><li>8 string data blocks.</li></ul>
	.SDATAB	2,"""BBB"""	<ul><li>The character string in this example</li><li>includes double quotation marks.</li></ul>
	.SDATAB	2,"ABAB" <h'07></h'07>	<ul><li>i The character string in this example has</li><li>i a control character appended.</li></ul>

 $\sim$ 



### .SDATAC Character String Data Reservation (With Length)

### **Syntax**

```
[\mbox{\sc symbol>[:]]} \varnothing. \mbox{\sc SDATAC} \mbox{\sc "} \mbox{\sc character string>"[,"\mbox{\sc character string>"...]}
```

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a reference symbol if required.

2. Operation

Enter the .SDATAC mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the character string(s) to be reserved.

#### **Description**

1. .SDATAC is the assembler directive that reserves character string data (with length) in memory.

A character string with length is a character string with an inserted leading byte that indicates the length of the string.

The length indicates the size of the character string (not including the length) in bytes.

Reference: Character strings → Programmer's Guide, 1.7, "Character Strings"

2. A control character can be appended to a character string.

The syntax for this notation is as follows.

"<character string>"<<ASCII code for a control character>>

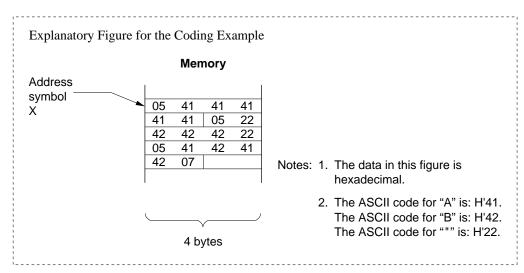
The ASCII code for a control character must be specified as follows.

- The specification must be an absolute value, and,
- Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

~

(This statement adjusts the value of the .ALIGN location counter.) x:.SDATAC "AAAAA" ; This statement reserves character string data (with length). .SDATAC """BBB""" The character string in this example includes double quotation marks. .SDATAC "ABAB"<H'07> ; The character string in this example has ; a control character appended.

 $\sim$ 



### .SDATAZ Character String Data Reservation (With Zero Terminator)

### **Syntax**

[<symbol>[:]]Ø.SDATAØ"<character string>"[,"<character string>"...]

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a reference symbol if required.

2. Operation

Enter the .SDATAZ mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the character string(s) to be reserved.

### **Description**

1. .SDATAZ is the assembler directive that reserves character string data (with zero terminator) in memory.

A character string with zero terminator is a character string with an appended trailing byte (with the value H'00) that indicates the end of the string.

Reference: Character strings → Programmer's Guide, 1.7, "Character Strings"

2. A control character can be appended to a character string.

The syntax for this notation is as follows.

"<character string>"<<ASCII code for a control character>>

The ASCII code for a control character must be specified as follows.

- The specification must be an absolute value, and,
- Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

х:

.ALIGN 4

(This statement adjusts the value of the

location counter.)

.SDATAZ "AAAAA"

; This statement reserves character string

; data (with zero terminator).

.SDATAZ """BBB"""

The character string in this example

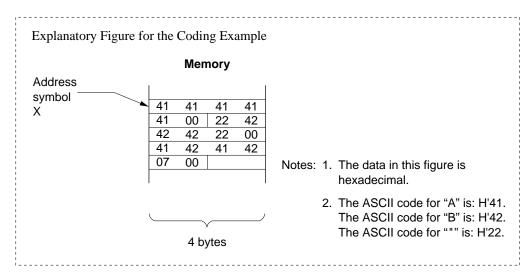
includes double quotation marks.

**.SDATAZ** "ABAB"<H'07>

; The character string in this example has

; a control character appended.

 $\sim$ 



## .FDATA Floating-Point Data Reservation

### **Syntax**

```
[<symbol>[:]]Ø.FDATA[.S]Ø<floating-point data>
[,<floating-point data>...]
```

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a reference symbol if required.

- 2. Operation
  - Mnemonic

Enter .FDATA mnemonic.

- Operation size

Enter S for single precision.

3. Operands

Enter the values to be reserved as data.

## **Description**

- 1. .FDATA is the assembler directive that reserves floating-point data in memory.
- 2. .FDATA can be specified for any CPU.

Reference: Floating-point numbers

→ Programmer's Guide, 1.4.3, "Floating-Point Numbers"

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

Memory

Address symbol

X

41 45 70 A3

7F 80 00 00

4 bytes

### .FDATAB Floating-Point Data Block Reservation

### **Syntax**

[<symbol>[:]]Ø.FDATAB[.S]Ø<block count>,<floating-point data>

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a reference symbol if required.

- 2. Operation
  - Mnemonic

Enter .FDATAB mnemonic.

— Operation size

Enter S for single precision.

- 3. Operands
  - First operand: block count

Enter the number of times the data value is repeated as the first operand.

— Second operand: floating-point data

Enter the floating-point number to be reserved as the second operand.

### **Description**

- 1. .FDATAB is the assembler directive that reserves the specified number of floating-point data items consecutively in memory.
- 2. The block count must be specified as follows:
  - The specification must be an absolute value, and,
  - Forward reference symbols, export symbols, and relative symbols must not appear in specification.
- 3. The range of values that can be specified as the block count must be from 1 to 1,073,741,823.

Reference: Floating-point number

→ Programmer's Guide, 1.4.3, "Floating-Point Numbers"

; (This statement adjusts the value of the .ALIGN ; location counter.) 2 , H  $^{\prime}$  7F800000 . S  $\,$  ; This statement reserves two blocks of 4-byte x:.FDATAB.S ; areas 7F800000 (H'7F800000.S). Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example Memory Address symbol 80 00 00 7F 00 80 00 4 bytes

#### .XDATA Fixed-Point Data Reservation

### **Syntax**

```
[<symbol>[:]]Ø.XDATA[.<operation size>]Ø<fixed-point data> [,<fixed-point data>...]
```

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a reference symbol if required.

- 2. Operation
  - Mnemonic

Enter .XDATA mnemonic.

— Operation size

Specifier	Data Size	
W	Word (2 bytes)	
L	Long word (4 bytes)	

The shaded section indicates the default value when the specifier is omitted.

- The specifier determines the size of the reserved data.
- The long word size is used when the specifier is omitted.
- 3. Operands

Enter the fixed-point number to be reserved as data in the operand field.

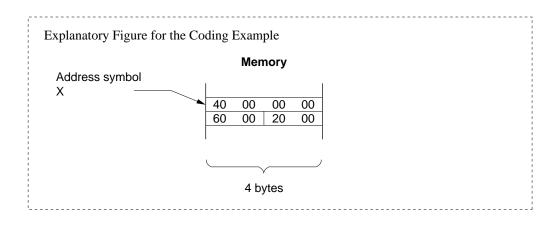
### **Description**

1. .XDATA is the assembler directive that reserves fixed-point data in memory.

Reference: Fixed-point number

→ Programmer's Guide, 1.4.4, "Fixed-Point Numbers"

.ALIGN 4 ; (This statement adjusts the value of the ; location counter.)
X: .XDATA.L 0.5 ; This statement reserves 4-byte area ; (H'40000000).
.XDATA.W 0.75,0.25 ; This statement reserves 2-byte areas ; (H'6000) and (H'2000).



#### .RES Data Area Reservation

### **Syntax**

[<symbol>[:]]Ø.RES[.<operation size>]Ø<area count>

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a reference symbol if required.

- 2. Operation
  - Mnemonic

Enter .RES mnemonic.

— Operation size

Specifier	Data Size	
В	Byte	
W	Word (2 bytes)	
L	Long word (4 bytes)	

The shaded section indicates the default value when the specifier is omitted.

The specifier determines the size of one area.

The long word size is used when the specifier is omitted.

3. Operands

Enter the number of areas to be reserved in the operand field.

#### **Description**

- 1. .RES is the assembler directive that reserves data areas in memory.
- 2. The area count must be specified as follows:
  - The specification must be an absolute value,
  - Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.
- 3. The range of values that can be specified as the area count varies with the operation size.

Operation Size	Area Count Range*
В	H'00000001 to H'FFFFFFF (1 to 4,294,967,295)
W	H'00000001 to H'7FFFFFF (1 to 2,147,483,647)
L	H'00000001 to H'3FFFFFF (1 to 1,073,741,823)

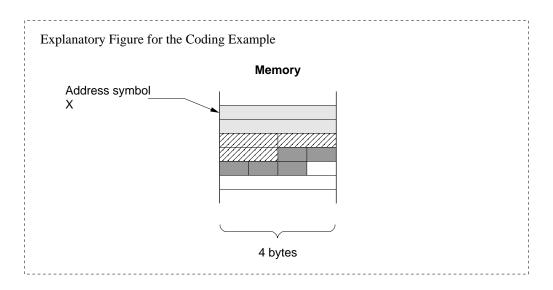
Note: Numbers in parentheses are decimal.

.ALIGN 4 ; (This statement adjusts the value of the location ; counter.)

X: .RES.L 2 ; This statement reserves two long word size areas.

.RES.W 3 ; This statement reserves three word size areas.

.RES.B 5 ; This statement reserves five byte size areas.



## .SRES Character String Data Area Reservation

### **Syntax**

```
[<symbol>[:]]Ø.SRESØ<character string area size> [,<character string area size>...]
```

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a reference symbol if required.

2. Operation

Enter the .SRES mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the sizes of the areas to be reserved.

#### **Description**

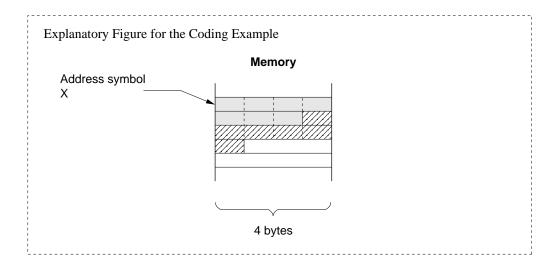
- 1. .SRES is the assembler directive that reserves character string data areas.
- 2. The character string area size must be specified as follows:
  - The specification must be an absolute value, and,
  - Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values that are allowed for the character string area size are from H'00000001 to H'FFFFFFF (from 1 to 4,294,967,295 in decimal).

~

. ALIGN 4 ; (This statement adjusts the value of the location ; counter.)

X: .sres 7 ; This statement reserves a 7-byte area.
.sres 6 ; This statement reserves a 6-byte area.



### .SRESC Character String Data Area Reservation (With Length)

### **Syntax**

```
[<symbol>[:]]Ø.SRESCØ<character string area size> [,<character string area size>...]
```

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a reference symbol if required.

2. Operation

Enter the .SRESC mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the sizes of the areas (not including the length) to be reserved.

#### **Description**

1. .SRESC is the assembler directive that reserves character string data areas (with length) in memory.

A character string with length is a character string with an inserted leading byte that indicates the length of the string.

The length indicates the size of the character string (not including the length) in bytes.

Reference: Character strings → Programmer's Guide, 1.7, "Character Strings"

- 2. The character string area size must be specified as follows:
  - The specification must be an absolute value, and,
  - Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

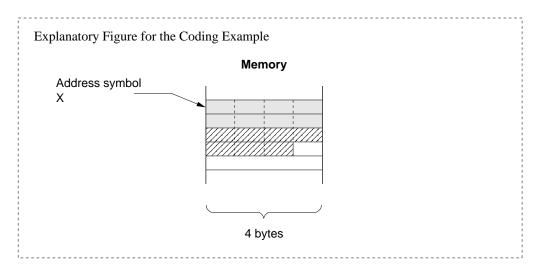
The values that are allowed for the character string area size are from H'00000000 to H'000000FF (in decimal, from 0 to 255).

3. The size of the area reserved in memory is the size of the character string area itself plus 1 byte for the count.

~

	$\sim$		
	.ALIGN	4	<ul><li>; (This statement adjusts the value of the location</li><li>; counter.)</li></ul>
х:	.SRESC	7	<ul><li>7 This statement reserves 7 bytes plus 1 byte for</li><li>7 the count.</li></ul>
	.SRESC	6	<ul><li>; This statement reserves 6 bytes plus 1 byte for</li><li>; the count.</li></ul>

~



### .SRESZ Character String Data Area Reservation (With Zero Terminator)

### **Syntax**

```
[<symbol>[:]]Ø.SRESZØ<character string area size> [,<character string area size>...]
```

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a reference symbol if required.

2. Operation

Enter the .SRESZ mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the sizes of the areas (not including the terminating zero) to be reserved.

### **Description**

1. .SRESZ is the assembler directive that allocates character string data areas (with zero termination).

A character string with length is a character string with an appended trailing byte (with the value H'00) that indicates the end of the string.

Reference: Character strings → Programmer's Guide, 1.7, "Character Strings"

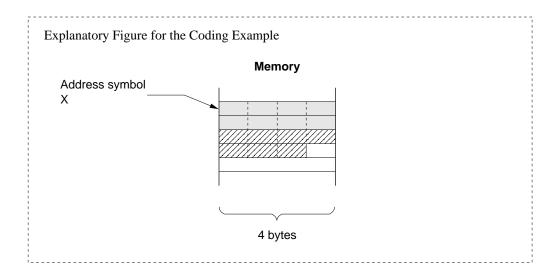
- 2. The character string area size must be specified as follows:
  - The specification must be an absolute value, and,
  - Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

The values that are allowed for the character string area size are from H'00000000 to H'000000FF (in decimal, from 0 to 255).

3. The size of the area reserved in memory is the size of the character string area itself plus 1 byte for the terminating zero.

~

. ALIGN 4 ; (This statement adjusts the value of counter.)	of the location
<ul><li>x: .sresz</li><li>y: This statement reserves 7 bytes p</li><li>y: the terminating byte.</li></ul>	olus 1 byte for
• sresz 6 ; This statement reserves 6 bytes p ; the terminating byte.	olus 1 byte for



## .FRES Floating-Point Data Area Reservation

### **Syntax**

[<symbol>[:]]Ø.FRES[S]Ø<area count>

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a reference symbol if required.

- 2. Operation
  - Mnemonic
    - Enter .FRES mnemonic.
  - Operation size

Enter S for single precision.

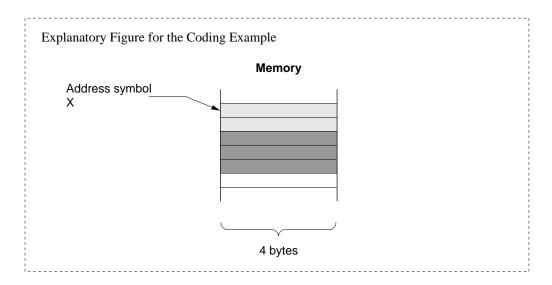
3. Operands

Enter the number of areas (the number of single-precision data items).

### **Description**

- 1. .FRES is the assembler directive that reserves floating-point data areas in memory.
- 2. The area count must be specified as follows:
  - The specification must be an absolute value, and.
  - Forward reference symbols, import symbols, and relative symbols must not appear in the specification.

.ALIGN 4 ; (This statement adjusts the value of the location ; counter.)
X: .FRES 2 ; This statement reserves two areas.
.FRES 3 ; This statement reserves three areas.



# **4.2.5** Export and Import Assembler Directives

This assembler provides the following assembler directives concerned with export and import.

.EXPORT	Declares export symbols.	This declaration allows symbols defined in the current file to be referenced in other files.
.IMPORT	Declares import symbols.	This declaration allows symbols defined in other files to be referenced in the current file.
.GLOBAL		This declaration allows symbols defined in the current file to be referenced in other files, and allows symbols defined in other files to be referenced in the current file.

### .EXPORT Export Symbols Declaration

#### **Syntax**

Ø.EXPORTØ<symbol>[,<symbol>...]

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .EXPORT mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the symbols to be declared as export symbols.

## **Description**

1. .EXPORT is the assembler directive that declares export symbols.

An export symbol declaration is required to reference symbols defined in the current file from other files.

- 2. The following can be declared to be export symbols.
  - Constant symbols (other than those defined with the .ASSIGN directive)
  - Absolute address symbols (other than address symbols in a dummy section)
  - Relative address symbols
- 3. To reference a symbol as an import symbol, it is necessary to declare it to be an export symbol, and also to declare it to be an import symbol.

Import symbols are declared in the file in which they are referenced using either the .IMPORT or the .GLOBAL directive.

(In this example, a symbol defined in file A is referenced from file B.)

### File A:

\*\* . EQU H'10000000 ; This statement declares X to be an export ; symbol.

\*\*X: . EQU H'10000000 ; This statement defines X.

### File B:

. IMPORT X ; This statement declares X to be an import symbol ...

ALIGN 4
...DATA.L X ; This statement references X.

### .IMPORT Import Symbols Declaration

### **Syntax**

Ø.IMPORTØ<symbol>[,<symbol>...]

## **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .IMPORT mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the symbols to be declared as import symbols.

# **Description**

- IMPORT is the assembler directive that declares import symbols.
   An import symbol declaration is required to reference symbols defined in another file.
- 2. Symbols defined in the current file cannot be declared to be import symbols.
- 3. To reference a symbol as an import symbol, it is necessary to declare it to be an export symbol, and also to declare it to be an import symbol.

Export symbols are declared in the file in which they are defined using either the .EXPORT or the .GLOBAL directive.

(In this example, a symbol defined in file A is referenced from file B.)

File A:

. EXPORT  $\,\,$  X  $\,\,$  ; This statement declares X to be an export symbol

~

X: . EQU H'10000000 ; This statement defines X.

~

File B:

.IMPORT X ; This statement declares X to be an import

; symbol.

~

.ALIGN 4

. DATA.L X ; This statement references X.

~

#### .GLOBAL Export and Import Symbols Declaration

#### **Syntax**

 $\emptyset$ .GLOBAL $\emptyset$ <symbol>[,<symbol>...]

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .GLOBAL mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the symbols to be declared as export symbols or as import symbols.

#### **Description**

1. .GLOBAL is the assembler directive that declares symbols to be either export symbols or import symbols.

An export symbol declaration is required to reference symbols defined in the current file from other files. An import symbol declaration is required to reference symbols defined in another file.

2. A symbol defined within the current file is declared to be an export symbol by a .GLOBAL declaration.

A symbol that is not defined within the current file is declared to be an import symbol by a .GLOBAL declaration.

- 3. The following can be declared to be export symbols.
  - Constant symbols (other than those defined with the .ASSIGN assembler directive)
  - Absolute address symbols (other than address symbols in a dummy section)
  - Relative address symbols
- 4. To reference a symbol as an import symbol, it is necessary to declare it to be an export symbol, and also to declare it to be an import symbol.

Export symbols are declared in the file in which they are defined using either the .EXPORT or the .GLOBAL directive.

Import symbols are declared in the file in which they are referenced using either the .IMPORT or the .GLOBAL directive.

(In this example, a symbol defined in file A is referenced from file B.)

File A:

.GLOBAL X ; This statement declares X to be an export

; symbol.

~

X: .EQU H'10000000 ; This statement defines X.

~

File B:

.GLOBAL X ; This statement declares X to be an import

; symbol.

.ALIGN 4

. DATA.L X ; This statement references X.

~

# **4.2.6** Object Module Assembler Directives

This assembler provides the following assembler directives concerned with object modules.

.OUTPUT	Controls object module and debug information output.
.DEBUG	Controls the output of symbolic debug information.
.ENDIAN	Selects big endian or little endian.
.LINE	Changes line number.

## .OUTPUT Object Module Output Control

## **Syntax**

Ø.OUTPUTØ<output specifier>[,<output specifier>]

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .OUTPUT mnemonic.

3. Operands: <output specifier>

Output Specifier	Output Control
OBJ	An object module is output.
NOOBJ	No object module is output.
DBG	Debug information is output in the object module.
NODBG	No debug information is output in the object module.

The shaded section indicates the default value when the specifier is omitted.

The output specifiers control object module and debug information output.

## **Description**

- 1. .OUTPUT is the assembler directive that controls object module and debug information output.
- 2. If the .OUTPUT directive is used two or more times in a program with inconsistent output specifiers, an error occurs.

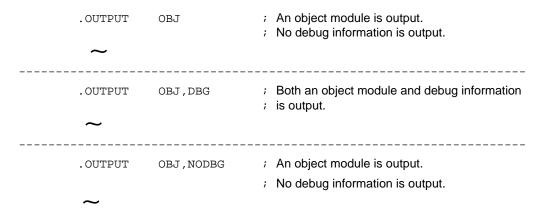
Example:	~			~		
	.OUTPUT	OBJ		.OUTPUT	OBJ	
	.OUTPUT	NODBG	$\leftarrow$ OK	.OUTPUT	NOOBJ	$\leftarrow$ Error
	~			~		
	-		<del></del>			

- 3. Specifications concerning debug information output are only valid when an object module is output.
- 4. The assembler gives priority to command line option specifications concerning object module and debug information output.

References: Object module output

- ightarrow User's Guide, 2.2.2, "Object Module Command Line Options" -OBJECT -NOOBJECT Debug information output
- → User's Guide, 2.2.2, "Object Module Command Line Options" -DEBUG -NODEBUG

Note: This example and its description assume that no command line options concerning object module or debug information output were specified.



## **Supplement:**

Debug information is required when debugging a program using the simulator/debugger, and is part of the object module.

Debug information includes information about source statements and information about symbols.

## .DEBUG Symbolic Debug Information Output Control

## **Syntax**

Ø.DEBUGØ<output specifier>

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .DEBUG mnemonic.

3. Operands: output specifier

Output Specifier	Output Control
ON	Symbolic debug information is output starting with the next source statement.
OFF	Symbolic debug information is not output starting with the next source statement.

The shaded section indicates the default value when the specifier is omitted.

The output specifier controls symbolic debug information output.

## **Description**

- .DEBUG is the assembler directive that controls the output of symbolic debug information.
   This directive allows assembly time to be reduced by restricting the output of symbolic debug information to only those symbols required in debugging.
- 2. The specification of the .DEBUG directive is only valid when both an object module and debug information are output.

References: Object module output

- → Programmer's Guide, 4.2.6, "Object Module Assembler Directives", .OUTPUT
- → User's Guide, 2.2.2 "Object Module Command Line Options"
   -OBJECT -NOOBJECT

Debug information output

- → Programmer's Guide 4.2.6, "Object Module Assembler Directives", .OUTPUT
- → User's Guide, 2.2.2, "Object Module Command Line Options"
   -DEBUG -NODEBUG

~		
.DEBUG	OFF	<ul><li>Starting with the next statement, the assembler</li><li>does not output symbolic debug information.</li></ul>
~		
.DEBUG	ON	<ul><li>Starting with the next statement, the assembler</li><li>outputs symbolic debug information.</li></ul>
~		
.DEBUG	OFF	<ul><li>Starting with the next statement, the assembler</li><li>does not output symbolic debug information.</li></ul>
~		
.DEBUG	ON	<ul><li>Starting with the next statement, the assembler</li><li>outputs symbolic debug information.</li></ul>
~		

# **Supplement:**

The term "symbolic debug information" refers to the parts of debug information concerned with symbols.

#### .ENDIAN Endian Selection

## **Syntax**

```
Ø.ENDIANØ[<endian>]
<endian>:{BIG|LITTLE}
```

## **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .ENDIAN mnemonic.

3. Operands: endian

Endian	Output Control
BIG	Assembles program in big endian
LITTLE	Assembles program in little endian

The shaded section indicates the default value when the specifier is omitted.

## **Description**

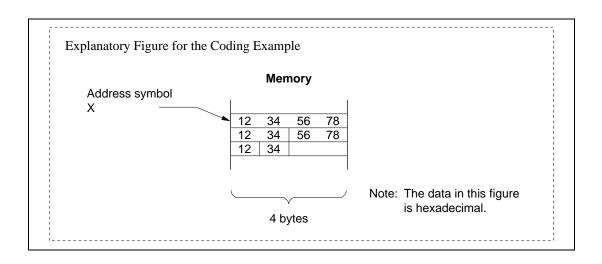
- 1. .ENDIAN is the assembler directive that selects the big endian or little endian.
- 2. The endian specified by an .ENDIAN directive is valid until the next .ENDIAN is specified.
- 3. If the -ENDIAN option has been specified, the .ENDIAN is invalidated.

Reference: -ENDIAN

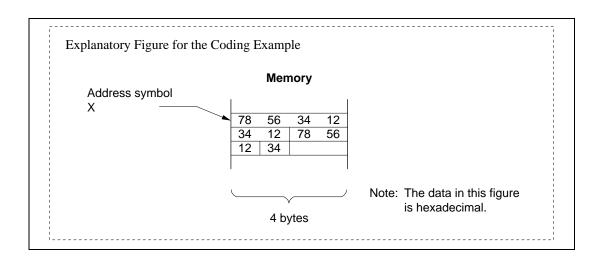
→ User's Guide, 2.2.2 "Object Module Command Line Options" -ENDIAN

1. When the big endian is selected

```
ENDIAN BIG ; This statement selects the big endian.
X: DATA.L H'12345678 ;
DATA.W H'1234,H'5678 ; These statements reserve integer data.
DATA.B H'12,H'34 ;
```



## 2. When the little endian is selected



#### .LINE Line Number Modification

## **Syntax**

Ø.LINEØ["<file name>",]<line number>

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .LINE mnemonic.

- 3. Operands
  - First operand: file name

Enter the file name referred to at error message output or at debugging.

— Second operand: line number

Enter the line number referred to at error message output or at debugging.

## **Description**

- 1. .LINE is the assembler directive that changes the file name and line number referred to at error message output or at debugging.
- 2. The line number and the file name specified with a .LINE directive is valid until the next .LINE.
- 3. In an SH C Compiler of version 3.0 or higher, the .LINE directive that corresponds to the line number in the C source file is generated when the debug option is specified and an assembler source is output.
- 4. If the file name is omitted, the file name is not changed, but only the line number is changed.

```
shc -code=asmcode -debug test.c
  C source program (test.c)
                                    Assembly source program (test.src)
                                              _func
int
     func()
                                    .EXPORT
                                    .SECTION P,CODE,ALIGN=4
{
   int i,j;
                                    .LINE "/asm/test.c",1
                             _func:
                                                 ; function: func
   j=0;
                                                  ; frame size=0
   for (i=1;i<=10;i++) \{
                                             "/asm/test.c",5
                                    .LINE
      j+=i;
                                    MOV
                                             #0,R5
                                    .LINE
                                              "/asm/test.c",6
   return(j);
                                    MOV
                                              #10,R6
                                    MOV
                                              #1,R4
                             L212:
                                              "/asm/test.c",7
                                    .LINE
                                    ADD
                                              R4,R5
                                    ADD
                                              #1,R4
                                    .LINE
                                              "/asm/test.c",6
                                    CMP/GT
                                             R6,R4
                                             L212
                                    BF
                                    .LINE
                                             "/asm/test.c",10
                                    RTS
                                              "/asm/test.c",9
                                    .LINE
                                              R5,R0
                                    MOV
                                    .END
                            i-----i
```

# 4.2.7 Assemble Listing Assembler Directives

This assembler provides the following assembler directives for controlling the assemble listing.

.PRINT	Controls assemble listing output.
.LIST	Controls the output of the source program listing.
.FORM	Sets the number of lines and columns in the assemble listing.
.HEADING	Sets the header for the source program listing.
.PAGE	Inserts a new page in the source program listing.
.SPACE	Outputs blank lines to the source program listing.

# **Supplement:**

The assemble listing is a listing to which the results of the assembly are output, and includes a source program listing, a cross-reference listing, and a section information listing.

Reference: For a detailed description of the assemble listing, see appendix C, "Assemble

Listing Output Example".

## .PRINT Assemble Listing Output Control

## **Syntax**

```
Ø.PRINTØ<output specifier>[,<output specifier>...]
```

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .PRINT mnemonic.

3. Operands: output specifier

Output Specifier	Assembler Action
LIST	An assemble listing is output.
NOLIST	No assemble listing is output.
SRC	A source program listing is output in the assemble listing.
NOSRC	No source program listing is output in the assemble listing.
CREF	A cross-reference listing is output in the assemble listing.
NOCREF	No cross-reference listing is output in the assemble listing.
SCT	A section information listing is output in the assemble listing.
NOSCT	No section information listing is output in the assemble listing.

The shaded sections indicate the default settings when the specifier is omitted.

The output specifier controls assemble listing output.

## **Description**

- 1. .PRINT is the assembler directive that controls assemble listing output.
- 2. If the .PRINT directive is used two or more times in a program with inconsistent output specifiers, an error occurs.

Example:	~			~		
	.PRINT	LIST		.PRINT	LIST	
	.PRINT	NOSRC	$\leftarrow$ OK	.PRINT	NOLIST	$\leftarrow$ Error
	~			~		

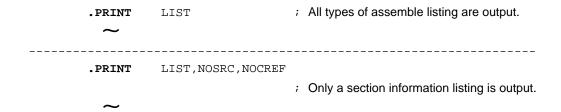
- 3. The output specifiers concerned with the source program listing, the cross-reference listing, and the section information listing are only valid when an assemble listing is output.
- 4. The assembler gives priority to command line option specifications concerning assemble listing output.

References: Assemble listing output

- → User's Guide, 2.2.3, "Assemble Listing Command Line Options"
  - -LIST -NOLIST
  - -SOURCE -NOSOURCE
  - -CROSS\_REFERENCE -NOCROSS\_REFERENCE
  - -SECTION -NOSECTION

## **Coding Example**

Note: This example and its description assume that no command line options concerning assemble listing output are specified.



## .LIST Source Program Listing Output Control

## **Syntax**

## **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .LIST mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the output specifiers.

## **Description**

- 1. .LIST is the assembler directive that controls output of the source program listing in the following three ways:
  - a Selects whether or not to output source statements.
  - b Selects whether or not to output source statements related to the conditional assembly and macro functions.
  - c Selects whether or not to output object code lines.
- 2. Output is controlled by output specifiers as follows:

## **Output Specifier**

Туре	Output	Not output	Object	Description
а	ON	OFF	Source statements	The source statements following this directive
b	COND	NOCOND	Failed condition	Condition-failed .AIF or .AIFDEF directive statements
	DEF	NODEF	Definition	Macro definition statements .AREPEAT and .AWHILE definition statements .INCLUDE directive statements .ASSIGNA and .ASSSIGNC directive statements
	CALL	NOCALL	Call	Macro call statements, .AIF, AIFDEF, and .AENDI directive statements
	EXP	NOEXP	Expansion	Macro expansion statements .AREPEAT and .AWHILE expansion statements
С	CODE	NOCODE	Object code lines	The object code lines exceeding the source statement lines

The shaded sections indicate the default settings when the specifier is omitted.

- 3. The specification of the .LIST directive is only valid when an assemble listing is output. References: Source program listing output
  - → Programmer's Guide, 4.2.7, "Assemble Listing Assembler Directives", .PRINT
  - → User's Guide, 2.2.3, "Assemble Listing Command Line Options", -LIST -NOLIST -SOURCE -NOSOURCE
- 4. The assembler gives priority to command line option specifications concerning source program listing output.

Reference: Output on the source program listing

- → User's Guide, 2.2.3, "Assemble Listing Command Line Options"
- -SHOW -NOSHOW
- 5. .LIST directive statements themselves are not output on the source program listing.

	.LIST NOCOND, NODEF .MACRO SHLRN COUNT, Rd	This statement controls source program listing output.
SHIFT	.ASSIGNA \COUNT	
SHIFT	.AIF \&SHIFT GE 16 SHLR16 \Rd .ASSIGNA \&SHIFT-16 .AENDI	
SHIFT	.AIF \&SHIFT GE 8 SHLR8 \Rd .ASSIGNA \&SHIFT-8 .AENDI	
SHIFT	.AIF \&SHIFT GE 4 SHLR2 \Rd SHLR2 \Rd .ASSIGNA \&SHIFT-4 .AENDI	These statements define a general- purpose multiple-bit shift procedure as a macro instruction.
SHIFT	.AIF \&SHIFT GE 2 SHLR2 \Rd .ASSIGNA \&SHIFT-2 .AENDI	
	.AIF \&SHIFT GE 1 SHLR \Rd .AENDI .ENDM	
	SHLRN 23,R0 .END	
		Macro call

# **Source Listing Output of Coding Example**

The .LIST directive suppresses the output of the macro definition, .ASSIGNA and .ASSIGNC directive statements, and .AIF and .AIFDEF condition-failed statements.

*** SH SERIES ASSEMBLER Ver	. 3.0 *** 07/	09/95 16:33: PAGE 1	49
PROGRAM NAME =			
31	31		
32	32	SHLRN	23,R0
33	M		
35	M		
36	M	.AIF 23	GE 16
37 00000000 4029	C	SHLR16	R0
39	M	.AENDI	
40	M		
41	M	.AIF 7	GE 8
45	M		
46	M	.AIF 7	GE 4
47 00000002 4009	C	SHLR2	R0
48 00000004 4009	С	SHLR2	R0
50	M	.AENDI	
51	M		
52	M	.AIF 3	GE 2
53 00000006 4009	С	SHLR2	R0
55	M	.AENDI	
56	M		
57	M	.AIF 1	GE 1
58 00000008 4001	С	SHLR	R0
59	M	.AENDI	
60	33	.END	
*****TOTAL ERRORS 0	)		
*****TOTAL WARNINGS 0	)		
~			

#### .FORM Assemble Listing Line Count and Column Count Setting

## **Syntax**

```
Ø.FORMØ<size specifier>[,<size specifier>...]
```

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .FORM mnemonic.

3. Operands: size specifier

Size Specifier	Listing Size		
LIN= <line count=""></line>	The specified value is set to the number of lines per page.		
COL= <column count=""></column>	The specified value is set to the number of columns per line.		

These specifications determine the number of lines and columns in the assemble listing.

#### **Description**

- 1. .FORM is the assembler directive that sets the number of lines per page and columns per line in the assemble listing.
- 2. The line count and column count must be specified as follows:
  - The specifications must be absolute values, and,
  - Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specifications.

The values allowed for the line count are from 20 to 255.

The values allowed for the column count are from 79 to 255.

- 3. The .FORM directive can be used any number of times in a given source program.
- 4. The assembler gives priority to command line option specifications concerning the number of lines and columns in the assemble listing.

References: Setting the line count in assemble listing

- $\rightarrow$  User's Guide, 2.2.3, "Assemble Listing Command Line Options" -LINES Setting the column count in assemble listing
- $\,\rightarrow\,\,$  User's Guide, 2.2.3, "Assemble Listing Command Line Options" -COLUMNS
- 5. When there is no specification of command line option or .FORM assembler directive specification for the line count or the column count, the following values are used:
  - Line count..... 60 lines
  - Column count 132 columns

Note: This example and its description assume that no command line options concerning the assemble listing line count and/or column count are specified.

~		
.FORM	LIN=60, COL=20	Starting with this page, the number of lines per page in the assemble listing is 60 lines. Also, starting with this line, the number of columns per line in the assemble listing is 200 columns.
.FORM	LIN=55, COL=15	Starting with this page, the number of lines per page in the assemble listing is 55 lines. Also, starting with this line, the number of columns per line in the assemble listing is 150 columns.

## .HEADING Source Program Listing Header Setting

## **Syntax**

Ø.HEADINGØ"<character string>"

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .HEADING mnemonic.

3. Operands: character string

Enter the header for the source program listing.

## **Description**

1. .HEADING is the assembler directive that sets the header for the source program listing. A character string of up to 60 characters can be specified as the header.

Reference: Character strings

- → Programmer's Guide, 1.7, "Character Strings"
- 2. The .HEADING directive can be used any number of times in a given source program.

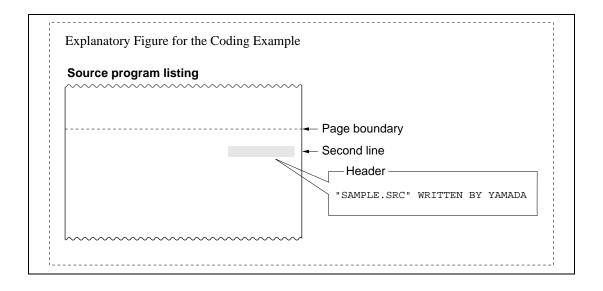
The range of validity for a given use of the .HEADING directive is as follows:

- When the .HEADING directive is on the first line of a page, it is valid starting with that page.
- When the .HEADING directive appears on the second or later line of a page, it is valid starting with the next page.

~

.HEADING """SAMPLE.SRC"" WRITTEN BY YAMADA"

 $\sim$ 



## .PAGE Source Program Listing New Page Insertion

## **Syntax**

Ø.PAGE

## **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .PAGE mnemonic.

3. Operands

The operand field is not used.

## **Description**

- 1. .PAGE is the assembler directive that inserts a new page in the source program listing at an arbitrary point.
- 2. The .PAGE directive is ignored if it is used on the first line of a page.
- 3. .PAGE directive statements themselves are not output to the source program listing.

~

MOV R0,R1

RTS MOV

R0,R2

.PAGE

; A new page is specified here since the

; section changes at this point.

.SECTION DT, DATA, ALIGN=4

.DATA.L H'11111111 .DATA.L H'2222222 .DATA.L H'33333333

~

	ogram listing	7				
·	~~~~~	~~~~~~	·····	~~~~~	~~~~~	`
18	00000022	6103	18	MOV	R0,R1	{
19	00000024	000B	19	RTS		\$
20	00000026	6203	20	MOV	R0,R2	>
						>
					Č	
					(	<u> </u>
					(	{
						>
					(	
					(	
						`
						) 
						5
*** SF	SERIES AS	SEMBLER Ver. 3	.0 *** 10/	/10/95 10:23:30		5
		SEMBLER Ver. 3.	.0 *** 10/	710/95 10:23:30		5
		SEMBLER Ver. 3.	.0 *** 10/	/10/95 10:23:30		,
		SEMBLER Ver. 3.	.0 *** 10/		DT, DATA, ALIGN	,
PROGR <i>A</i>	AM NAME =	SEMBLER Ver. 3.			DT, DATA, ALIGN H'1111111	Pa
PROGRA	MM NAME = 00000000		23	.SECTION		5

## .SPACE Source Program Listing Blank Line Output

## **Syntax**

 $\emptyset$ .SPACE[ $\emptyset$ <line count>]

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .SPACE mnemonic.

3. Operands: line count

Enter the number of blank lines.

A single blank line is output if this operand is omitted.

## **Description**

158

- 1. .SPACE is the assembler directive that outputs the specified number of blank lines to the source program listing. Nothing is output for the lines output by the .SPACE directive; in particular line numbers are not output for these lines.
- 2. The line count must be specified as follows:
  - The specification must be an absolute value, and,
  - Forward reference symbols must not appear in the specification.

Values from 1 to 50 can be specified as the line count.

- 3. When a new page occurs as the result of blank lines output by the .SPACE directive, any remaining blank lines are not output on the new page.
- 4. .SPACE directive statements themselves are not output to the source program listing.

```
.SECTION DT1,DATA,ALIGN=4
.DATA.L H'11111111
.DATA.L H'22222222
.DATA.L H'33333333
.DATA.L H'44444444 ; Inserts five blank lines at the point
.SPACE 5 ; where the section changes.
.SECTION DT2,DATA,ALIGN=4
```

Explanatory Figure for the Coding Example

Source program listing

	SERIES AS M NAME =	SEMBLER Ver.	3.0 ***	10/10/95	10:23:30		
1 2 3 4	00000000 00000000 00000004 00000008	33333333	1 2 3 4 5		.SECTION .DATA.L .DATA.L .DATA.L	DT1,DATA,ALIGN=4 H'111111111 H'2222222 H'33333333 H'44444444	
7	00000000		7		.SECTION	DT2,DATA,ALIGN=4	

Note: See appendix C, "Assemble Listing Output Example", for an explanation of the contents of the source program listing.

# 4.2.8 Other Assembler Directives

This assembler provides the following additional assembler directives.

.PROGRAM	Sets the name of the object module.
.RADIX	Sets the radix in which integer constants with no radix specifier are interpreted.
.END	Declares the end of the source program.

#### .PROGRAM Object Module Name Setting

## **Syntax**

Ø.PROGRAMØ<object module name>

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .PROGRAM mnemonic.

Operands: <object module name>
 Enter a name that identifies the object module.

## **Description**

1. .PROGRAM is the assembler directive that sets the object module name.

The object module name is a name that is required by the H Series Linkage Editor or the H Series Librarian to identify the object module.

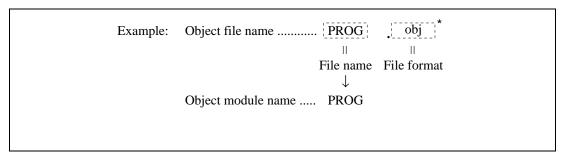
2. Object module naming conventions are the same as symbol naming conventions.

The assembler distinguishes upper-case and lower-case letter in object module names.

Reference: Coding of symbols

- → Programmer's Guide, 1.3.2, "Coding of Symbols"
- 3. Setting the object module name with the .PROGRAM directive is valid only once in a given program. (The assembler ignores the second and later specifications of the .PROGRAM directive.)
- 4. If there is no .PROGRAM specification of the object module name, the assembler will set a default (implicit) object module name.

The default object module name is the file name of the object file (the object module output destination).



Note: When MS-DOS is used, the file format is written in uppercase letters.

Reference: User's Guide, 1.2, "File Specification Format"

5. The object module name can be the same as a symbol used in the program.

# **Coding Example**

.PROGRAM PROG1 ; This statement sets the object module name to be

; PROG1.

 $\sim$ 

## .RADIX Default Integer Constant Radix Setting

## **Syntax**

Ø.RADIXØ<radix specifier>

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .RADIX mnemonic.

3. Operands: radix specifier

Radix Specifier	Radix of Integer Constants with No Radix Specification
В	Binary
Q	Octal
D	Decimal
Н	Hexadecimal

The shaded section indicates the default setting when the specifier is omitted.

This specifier sets the radix (base) for integer constants with no radix specification.

## **Description**

- 1. .RADIX is the assembler directive that sets the radix (base) for integer constants with no radix specification.
- 2. When there is no radix specification with the .RADIX directive in a program, integer constants with no radix specification are interpreted as decimal numbers.
- 3. If hexadecimal (radix specifier H) is specified as the radix for integer constants with no radix specification, integer constants whose first digit is A through F must be prefixed with a 0 (zero). (The assembler interprets expressions that begin with A through F to be symbols.)
- 4. Specifications with the .RADIX directive are valid from the point of specification forward in the program.

.RADIX D ; This 100 is decimal. x:.EQU 100 .RADIX Н .EQU ; This 64 is hexadecimal. **Y:** 64 .RADIX Н ; A zero is prefixed to this constant "0F" since it would .EQU z:0F ; be interpreted as a symbol if it were written as simply ; "F".

## .END Source Program End Declaration

## **Syntax**

Ø.END[Ø<start address>]

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .END mnemonic.

3. Operands: start address

Enter the start address for simulation if required.

## **Description**

- 1. .END is the assembler directive that declares the end of the source program.

  Assembly processing terminates at the point that the .END directive appears.
- 2. If a start address is specified with the .END directive in the operand field, the simulator/debugger starts simulation from that address.
- 3. The start address must be specified with either an absolute value or an address value.
- 4. The value of the start address must be an address in a code section.

## **Coding Example**

START:

CD,CODE,ALIGN=4

START:

This statement declares the end of the source ; program.
; The simulator/debugger starts simulation from ; the address indicated by the value of the ; symbol START.

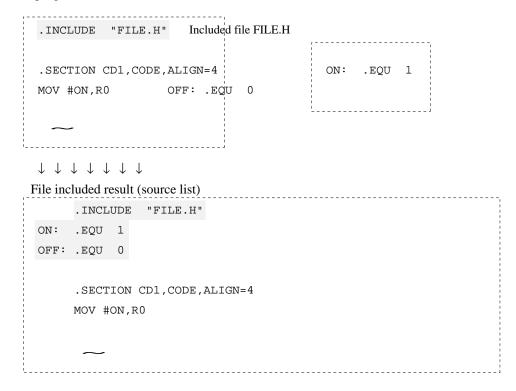
# Section 5 File Inclusion Function

The file inclusion function allows source files to be inserted into other source files at assembly time. The file inserted into another file is called an included file.

This assembler provides the .INCLUDE directive to perform file inclusion. The file specified with the .INCLUDE directive is inserted at the location of the .INCLUDE directive.

## **Example:**

Source program



#### .INCLUDE File Inclusion

## **Syntax**

 $\emptyset$ .INCLUDE $\emptyset$ "<file name>"

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .INCLUDE mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the file to be included.

## **Description**

- 1. .INCLUDE is the file inclusion assembler directive.
- 2. If no file format is specified, only the file name is used as specified (the assembler does not assume any default file format).

Reference: User's Guide, 1.2, "File Specification Format"

3. The file name can include the directory. The directory can be specified either by the absolute path (path from the route directory) or by the relative path (path from the current directory).

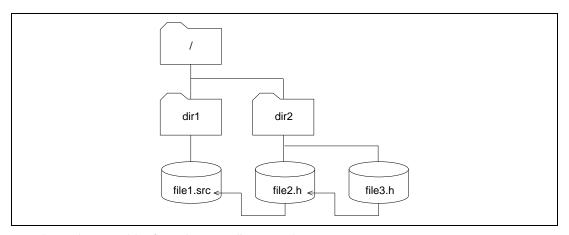
Note: The current directory for the .INCLUDE directive in a source file is the directory where the assembler is initiated. The current directory for the .INCLUDE directive in an included file is the directory where the included file exits.

- 4. Included files can include other files. The nesting depth for file inclusion is limited to 30 levels (multiplex state).
- 5. The directory name specified by .INCLUDE can be changed by -INCLUDE.

Reference: -INCLUDE

→ User's Guide, 2.2.4, "File Inclusion Function Command Line Option"

This example assumes the following directory configuration and operations:



- Starts the assembler from the route directory (/)
- Inputs source file /dir1/file1.src
- Inserts file2.h in file1.src
- Inserts file3.h in file2.h

The start command is as follows:

```
%asmsh /dir1/file1.src (RET)
```

file1.src must have the following inclusion directive:

```
. INCLUDE "dir2/file2.h" ; / is the current directory (relative path specification). or
```

.INCLUDE "/dir2/file2.h"; Absolute path specification

file2.h must have the following inclusion directive:

```
.INCLUDE "file3.h" ; /dir2 is the current directory (relative path specification).
```

.INCLUDE "/dir2/file3.h"; Absolute path specification

#### **CAUTION!**

or

When using MS-DOS, change the slash (/) in the above example as follows depending on the version of MS-DOS.

- Japanese version: Yen mark (¥)
- English version: Backslash (\)

# Section 6 Conditional Assembly Function

# 6.1 Overview of the Conditional Assembly Function

The conditional assembly function provides the following assembly operations:

- Replaces a character string in the source program with another character string.
- Selects whether or not to assemble a specified part of a source program according to the specified condition.
- Iteratively assembles a specified part of a source program.

# **6.1.1** Preprocessor variables

Preprocessor variables are used to write assembly conditions. Preprocessor variables are of either integer or character type.

1. Integer preprocessor variables

Integer preprocessor variables are defined by the .ASSIGNA directive (these variables can be redefined).

When referencing integer preprocessor variables, insert a backslash (\)\* and an ampersand (&) in front of them.

Example:

Note: When using a Japanese version of MS-DOS, use \( \frac{1}{2} \) instead of \( \).

2. Character preprocessor variables

Character preprocessor variables are defined by the .ASSIGNC directive (these variables can be redefined).

When referencing character preprocessor variables, insert a backslash (\)\* and an ampersand (&) in front of them.

# **Example:**

```
FLAG: .ASSIGNC "ON"

.AIF "\&FLAG" EQ "ON" ; MOV R0,R1 is assembled MOV R0,R1 ; when FLAG is "ON".

.AENDI
```

Note: When using a Japanese version of MS-DOS, use  $\Upsilon$  instead of  $\backslash$ .

# **6.1.2** Replacement Symbols

The .DEFINE directive specifies symbols that will be replaced with the corresponding character strings at assembly. A coding example is shown below.

```
Example:
SYM1: .DEFINE "R1"

MOV.L SYM1,R0; Replaced with MOV.L R1,R0.
```

# 6.1.3 Conditional Assembly

The conditional assembly function determines whether or not to assemble a specified part of a source program according to the specified conditions. Conditional assembly is classified into two types: conditional assembly with comparison and conditional assembly with definition.

# **Conditional Assembly with Comparison:**

Selects the part of program to be assembled according to whether or not the specified condition is satisfied. A coding example is as follows:

```
.AIF <comparison condition 1>
<Statements to be assembled when condition 1 is satisfied>
.AELIF <comparison condition 2>
<Statements to be assembled when condition 2 is satisfied>
.AELSE
<Statements to be assembled when both conditions are not satisfied>
.AENDI
---This part can be omitted.
```

### **Example:**

```
.AIF "\&FLAG" EQ "ON"

MOV R0,R10 ; Assembled when FLAG

MOV R1,R11 ; is ON.

MOV R2,R12 ;

.AELSE

MOV R10,R0 ; Assembled when FLAG

MOV R11,R1 ; is not ON.

MOV R12,R2 ;

.AENDI
```

#### **Conditional Assembly with Definition:**

Selects the part of program to be assembled by whether or not the specified replacement symbol has been specified. A coding example is as follows:

# **Example:**

```
.AIFDEF FLAG
                  ; Assembled when FLAG is defined with
MOV
       R0,R10
                  ; the .DEFINE directive after the .AIFDEF
MOV
       R1,R11
MOV
       R2,R12
                  ; directive in the program.
.AELSE
                  ; Assembled when FLAG is not defined with
MOV R10,R0
MOV
      R11,R1
                  ; the .DEFINE directive after the .AIFDEF
MOV R12,R2
                  ; directive in the program.
```

#### .AENDI

~

### 6.1.4 Iterated Expansion

A part of a source program can be iteratively assembled the specified number of times. A coding example is shown below.

```
. AREPEAT <count>
<Statements to be iterated>
. AENDR
```

### **Example:**

```
; R1:R2 (64 bits) \div R0 (32 bits) = R2 (32 bits): Unsigned TST R0,R0 ; Zero divisor check BT zero_div CMP/HS R0,R1 ; Overflow check
```

; This example is a division of 64-bit data by 32-bit data.

BT over\_div
DIV0U ; Flag initialization

.AREPEAT 32

ROTCL R2 ; These statements are iterated 32 times.

DIV1 R0,R1 ;

.AENDR

ROTCL R2 ; R2 = quotient

# 6.1.5 Conditional Iterated Expansion

A part of a source program can be iteratively assembled while the specified condition is satisfied. A coding example is shown below.

```
.AWHILE <condition>
<Statements to be iterated>
.AENDW
```

# **Example:**

; This example is a multiply and accumulate

; operation.

TblSiz: .ASSIGNA 50 ; TblSiz: Data table size

MOV A\_Tbl1,R1 ; R1: Start address of data table 1 MOV A\_Tbl2,R2 ; R2: Start address of data table 2

CLRMAC ; MAC register initialization

.AWHILE \&TblSize GT 0 ; While TblSiz is larger than 0,

MAC.W @R0+,@R1+ ; this statement is iteratively assembled.

TblSiz: .ASSIGNA \&TblSiz-1 ; 1 is subtracted from TblSiz.

.AENDW

STS MACL, RO ; The result is obtained in RO.

# **6.2** Conditional Assembly Directives

This assembler provides the following conditional assembly directives.

.ASSIGNA Defines an integer preprocessor variable. The defined variable can

be redefined.

.ASSIGNC Defines a character preprocessor variable. The defined variable can

be redefined.

.DEFINE Defines a preprocessor replacement character string.

.AIF Determines whether or not to assemble a part of a source program according to the specified condition. When the condition is satisfied, the statements after the .AIF are assembled. When not satisfied, the

.AENDI statements after the .AELIF or .AELSE are assembled.

.AIFDEF Determines whether or not to assemble a part of a source program

.AELSE according to the replacement symbol definition. When the

.AENDI replacement symbol is defined, the statements after the .AIFDEF are

assembled. When not defined, the statements after the .AELSE are

assembled.

.AREPEAT Repeats assembly of a part of a source program (between .AENDR .AREPEAT and .AENDR) the specified number of times.

.AWHILE Assembles a part of a source program (between .AWHILE and .AENDW .AENDW) iteratively while the specified condition is satisfied.

.AERROR Processes an error during preprocessor expansion.
.EXITM Terminates .AREPEAT or .AWHILE iterated expansion.
.ALIMIT Specifies the maximum count of .AWHILE expansion.

### .ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)

### **Syntax**

cpreprocessor variable>[:]Ø.ASSIGNAØ<value>

### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter the name of the preprocessor variable.

2. Operation

Enter the .ASSIGNA mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the value to be assigned to the preprocessor variable.

### **Description**

- 1. .ASSIGNA is the assembler directive that defines a value for an integer preprocessor variable. The syntax of integer preprocessor variables is the same as that for symbols. The assembler distinguishes uppercase and lowercase letters.
- 2. The preprocessor variables defined with the .ASSIGNA directive can be redefined with the .ASSIGNA directive.
- 3. The values for the preprocessor variables must be the following:
  - Constant (integer constant and character constant)
  - Defined preprocessor variable
  - Expression using the above as terms
- 4. Defined preprocessor variables are valid from the point of specification forward in the source program.
- 5. Defined preprocessor variables can be referenced in the following locations:
  - ASSIGNA directive
  - .ASSIGNC directive
  - .AIF directive
  - .AELIF directive
  - .AREPEAT directive
  - .AWHILE directive
  - Macro body (source statements between .MACRO and .ENDM)

When referencing integer preprocessor variables, insert a backslash ( $\$ )\* and an ampersand (&) in front of them.

```
\&<preprocessor variable>[']
```

To clearly distinguish the preprocessor variable name from the rest of the source statement, an apostrophe (') can be added.

Note: When using a Japanese version of MS-DOS, use ¥ instead of \.

When a preprocessor character string is defined by a command line option, the .ASSIGNA directive specifying the preprocessor valiable having the same name as the character string is invalidated.

#### **Coding Example**

```
; This example generates a general-purpose multiple-bit
                                 ; shift instruction which shifts bits to the right by the
                                 ; number of SHIFT.
RN:
        .REG
                  (R0)
                                 ; R0 is set to Rn.
                                ; 27 is set to SHIFT
SHIFT: .ASSIGNA 27
        .AIF \&SHIFT GE 16 ; Condition: SHIFT ≥ 16
        SHLR16 Rn ; When the condition is satisfied, Rn is shifted to the right by 16 bits.
SHIFT: .ASSIGNA \&SHIFT-16 ; 16 is subtracted from SHIFT.
        .AENDI
        .AIF \&SHIFT GE 8 ; Condition: SHIFT ≥ 8
        SHLR8 Rn ; When the condition is satisfied, Rn is shifted to the right by 8 bits.
SHIFT: .ASSIGNA \&SHIFT-8 ; 8 is subtracted from SHIFT.
        .AENDI
        .AIF \&SHIFT GE 4 ; Condition: SHIFT ≥ 4
                              ; When the condition is satisfied, Rn is shifted to the right by 4 bits.
        SHLR2 Rn
        SHLR2 Rn
SHIFT: .ASSIGNA \&SHIFT-4 ; 4 is subtracted from SHIFT.
        .AENDI
        .AIF \&SHIFT GE 2 ; Condition: SHIFT ≥ 2
        SHLR2 Rn
                               ; When the condition is satisfied, Rn is shifted to the right by 2 bits.
SHIFT: .ASSIGNA \&SHIFT-2 ; 2 is subtracted from SHIFT.
        .AENDI
        .AIF \&SHIFT EO 1 ; Condition: SHIFT = 1
                                ; When the condition is satisfied, Rn is shifted to the right by 1 bit.
        SHLR
        .AENDI
The expanded results are as follows:
        SHLR16 R0
                              ; When the condition is satisfied, Rn is shifted to the right by 16 bits.
                          ; When the condition is satisfied, Rn is shifted to the right by 8 bits.
        SHLR8 RO
        SHLR2 R0
                              ; When the condition is satisfied, Rn is shifted to the right by 2 bits.
                                ; When the condition is satisfied, Rn is shifted to the right by 1 bit.
        SHLR1 R0
```

#### .ASSIGNC Character Preprocessor Variable Definition (Redefinition Is Possible)

### **Syntax**

cpreprocessor variable>[:]Ø.ASSIGNCØ"<character string>"

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter the name of the preprocessor variable.

2. Operation

Enter the .ASSIGNC mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the character string enclosed with double quotation marks (").

### **Description**

- ASSIGNC is the assembler directive that defines a character string for an character
  preprocessor variable. The syntax of character preprocessor variables is the same as that for
  symbols. The assembler distinguishes uppercase and lowercase letters.
- 2. The preprocessor variables defined with the .ASSIGNC directive can be redefined with the .ASSIGNC directive.
- 3. Character strings are specified by characters or preprocessor variables enclosed by double quotation marks (").
- 4. Defined preprocessor variables are valid from the point of specification forward in the source program.
- 5. Defined preprocessor variables can be referenced in the following locations:
  - .ASSIGNA directive
  - .ASSIGNC directive
  - .AIF directive
  - .AELIF directive
  - .AREPEAT directive
  - .AWHILE directive
  - Macro body (source statements between .MACRO and .ENDM)

When referencing character preprocessor variables, insert a backslash (\)\* and an ampersand (&) in front of them.

\&preprocessor variable>[']

To clearly distinguish the preprocessor variable name from the rest of the source statement, an apostrophe (') can be added.

Note: When using a Japanese version of MS-DOS, use \(\frac{1}{2}\) instead of \(\cdot\).

When a preprocessor character string is defined by a command line option, the .ASSIGNC directive specifying the preprocessor variable having the same name as the character string is invalidated.

# **Coding Example**

```
FLAG: .ASSIGNC "ON" ; "ON" is set to FLAG.

AIF "\&FLAG" EQ "ON" ; MOV RO,R1 is assembled

MOV RO,R1 ; when FLAG is "ON".

.AENDI

.AENDI

.ASSIGNC "\&FLAG" ; A space (" ") is added to FLAG.

FLAG: .ASSIGNC "OFF" ; "OFF" is added to FLAGA.

FLAG: .ASSIGNC "\&FLAG'AND \&FLAGA"

; An apostrophe (') is used to distinguish FLAG and ; AND.

; FLAG finally becomes "ON AND OFF".
```

### .DEFINE Definition of Preprocessor Replacement Character String

### **Syntax**

<symbol>[:]Ø.DEFINEØ"<replacement character string>"

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a symbol to be replaced with a character string.

2. Operation

Enter the .DEFINE mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter a replacement character string enclosed with double quotation marks (").

### **Description**

- 1. .DEFINE is the assembler directive that specifies that the symbol is replaced with the corresponding character string.
- 2. The differences between the .DEFINE directive and the .ASSIGNC directive are as follows.
  - The symbol defined by the .ASSIGNC directive can only be used in the preprocessor statement; the symbol defined by the .DEFINE directive can be used in any statement.
  - The symbols defined by the .ASSIGNA and the .ASSIGNC directives are referenced by the "\&symbol" format; the symbol defined by the .DEFINE directive is referenced by the "symbol" format.
  - The .DEFINE symbol cannot be re-defined.
- 3. The .DEFINE directive specifying a symbol is invalidated when the same replacement symbol has been defined by a command line option.

### **Coding Example**

```
SYM1: .DEFINE "R1"

MOV.L SYM1,R0 ; Replaced with MOV.L R1,R0.
```

#### Notes

1. A hexadecimal number starting with an alphabetical character a to f or A to F will be replaced when the same character string is specified as a replacement symbol by .DEFINE. Add 0 to the beginning of the number to stop replacing such number.

```
A0: .DEFINE "0"

MOV.B #H'A0,R0 ; Replaced with MOV.B #H'0,R0.

MOV.B #H'0A0,R0 ; Not replaced.
```

2. A radix indication (B', Q', D', or H') will also be replaced when the same character string is specified as a replacement symbol by .DEFINE. When specifying a symbol having only one character, such as B, Q, D, H, b, q, d, or h, make sure that the corresponding radix indication is not used.

```
B .DEFINE "H"

MOV.B #B'10,R0 ; Replaced with MOV.H #H'10,R0.
```

### .AIF,.AELIF,.AELSE,.AENDI Conditional Assembly with Comparison

### **Syntax**

```
.AIF <terml> <relational operator> <term2>
  <Source statements assembled if the AIF condition is satisfied>

  [AELIF <terml> <relational operator> <term2>
  <Source statements assembled if the AELIF condition is satisfied>

  [AELSE  
  <Source statements assembled if all the conditions are not satisfied> ]

  [AENDI
```

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .AIF, .AELIF (can be omitted), .AELSE (can be omitted), or .AENDI mnemonic.

3. Operands

.AIF: Enter the condition. Refer to the description below.

.AELIF: Enter the condition. Refer to the description below.

.AELSE: The operand field is not used.

.AENDI: The operand field is not used.

#### **Description**

- .AIF, .AELIF, .AELSE, and .AENDI are the assembler directives that select whether or not
  to assemble source statements according to the condition specified. The .AELIF and .AELSE
  directives can be omitted.
- 2. .AELIF can be specified repeatedly between .AIF and .AELSE.
- 3. The condition must be specified as follows:

```
.AIF\Delta<term1>\Delta<relational operator>\Delta<term2>
```

.AELIF $\Delta$ <term1> $\Delta$ <relational operator> $\Delta$ <term2>

Terms are specified with numeric values or character strings. However, when a numeric value and a character string are compared, the condition always fails.

Numeric values are specified by constants or preprocessor variables.

Character strings are specified by characters or preprocessor variables enclosed by double quotation marks ("). To specify a double quotation mark in a character string, enter two double quotation marks ("") in succession.

4. The following relational operators can be used:

EQ: term1 = term2
NE: term1 \_ term2
GT: term1 > term2
LT: term1 < term2
GE: term1 ≥ term2
LE: term1 ≤ term2

Note: Numeric values are handled as 32-bit signed integers. For character strings, only EQ and NE conditions can be used.

### **Coding Example**

~

```
.AIF \ &TYPE EQ 1
MOV R0,R3
                         ; These statements
MOV R1,R4
                         ; are assembled
                         ; when TYPE is 1.
MOV R2,R5
.AELIF \&TYPE EQ 2
                         ; These statements
MOV RO,R6
                         ; are assembled
MOV R1,R7
MOV R2,R8
                         ; when TYPE is 2.
.AELSE
MOV R0,R9
                         ; These statements
                         ; are assembled
MOV R1,R10
                         ; when TYPE is not 1 nor 2.
MOV R2,R11
.AENDI
```

### .AIFDEF, .AELSE,.AENDI Conditional Assembly with Definition

### **Syntax**

```
.AIFDEF <replacement symbol>
<statements to be assembled when the specified replacement symbol is defined>

.AELSE
<statements to be assembled when the specified replacement symbol is not defined>

.AENDI
```

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .AIFDEF, .AELSE (can be omitted), or .AENDI mnemonic.

3. Operands

.AIFDEF: Enter the condition. Refer to the description below.

.AELSE: The operand field is not used.

.AENDI: The operand field is not used.

#### **Description**

186

- 1. .AIFDEF, .AELSE, and .AENDI are the assembler directives that select whether or not to assemble source statements according to the replacement symbol definition.
- 2. The condition must be specified as follows.

```
.AIFDEF\Delta<replacement symbol>
```

The replacement symbol must be defined by the .DEFINE directive.

When the specified replacement symbol is defined by the command line option or in the source statements before this directive, the condition is regarded as satisfied. When the replacement symbol is defined after this directive or is not defined, the condition is regarded as unsatisfied.

# **Coding Example**

~

.AIFDEF	FLAG	
MOV	R0,R3	; These statements are assembled when
MOV	R1,R4	; FLAG is defined with .DEFINE directive.
.AELSE		
MOV	R0,R6	; These statements are assembled when
MOV	R1,R7	; FLAG is not defined with .DEFINE directive.
.AENDI		

### .AREPEAT,.AENDR Iterated Expansion

### **Syntax**

Ø.AREPEAT <count>

<Source statements iteratively assembled>

 $\emptyset$ .AENDR

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .AREPEAT or .AENDR mnemonic.

3. Operands

.AREPEAT: Enter the number of iterations.

.AENDR: The operand field is not used.

#### **Description**

- 1. .AREPEAT and .AENDR are the assembler directives that assemble source statements by iteratively expanding them the specified number of times.
- 2. The source statements between the .AREPEAT and .AENDR directives are iterated the number of times specified with the .AREPEAT directive. Note that the source statements are simply copied the specified number of times, and therefore, the operation does not loop at program execution.
- 3. Counts are specified by constants or preprocessor variables.
- 4. Nothing is expanded if a value of 0 or smaller is specified.

# **Coding Example**

; This example is a division of 64-bit data by 32-bit data.

; R1:R2 (64 bits) ÷ R0 (32 bits) = R2 (32 bits): Unsigned

TST R0,R0 ; Zero divisor check

BT zero\_div

CMP/HS R0,R1 ; Overflow check

BT over\_div

DIV0U ; Flag initialization

.AREPEAT 32

ROTCL R2 ; These statements are DIV1 R0,R1 ; iterated 32 times.

.AENDR

ROTCL R2 ; R2 = quotient

#### .AWHILE, .AENDW Conditional Iterated Expansion

### **Syntax**

 $\emptyset$ .AWHILE $\Delta$ <term1> $\emptyset$ <relational operator> $\Delta$ <term2>

<Source statements iteratively assembled>

Ø.AENDW

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .AWHILE or .AENDW mnemonic.

3. Operands

.AWHILE: Enter the condition to iteratively expand source statements.

.AENDW: The operand field is not used.

#### **Description**

- 1. .AWHILE and .AENDW are the assembler directives that assemble source statements by iteratively expanding them while the specified condition is satisfied.
- 2. The source statements between the .AWHILE and .AENDW directives are iterated while the condition specified with the .AWHILE directive is satisfied. Note that the source statements are simply copied iteratively, and therefore, the operation does not loop at program execution.
- 3. The condition must be specified as follows:
  - .AWHILEØ<term1>Ø<relational operator>Ø<term2>

Terms are specified with numeric values or character strings. However, when a numeric value and a character string are compared, the condition always fails.

Numeric values are specified by constants or preprocessor variables.

Character strings are specified by characters or preprocessor variables enclosed by double quotation marks ("). To specify a double quotation mark in a character string, enter two double quotation marks ("") in succession.

Conditional iterated expansion terminates when the condition finally fails.

An infinite loop occurs if a condition which never fails is specified. Accordingly, the condition for this directive must be carefully specified.

4. The following relational operators can be used:

EQ: term1 = term2NE:  $term1 _ term2$ GT: term1 > term2LT: term1 < term2GE:  $term1 \ge term2$ LE:  $term1 \le term2$ 

Note: Numeric values are handled as 32-bit signed integers. For character strings, only EQ and NE conditions can be used.

# **Coding Example**

		;	This example is a multiply and accumulate
		;	operation.
TblSiz: .ASSIGNA	50	;	TblSiz: Data table size
MOV	A_Tbl1,R1	;	R1: Start address of data table 1
MOV	A_Tbl2,R2	;	R2: Start address of data table 2
CLRMAC		;	MAC register initialization
.AWHILE	\&TblSize GT 0	;	While TblSiz is larger than 0,
MAC.W	@R0+,@R1+	;	this statement is iteratively assembled.
TblSiz:.ASSIGNA	\&TblSiz-1	;	1 is subtracted from TblSiz.
. AENDW			
STS	MACL,R0	;	The result is obtained in R0.

# .AERROR Error Generation During Preprocessor Expansion

### **Syntax**

 $\emptyset$ .AERROR

### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .AERROR mnemonic.

3. Operands

The operand field is not used.

## **Description**

- 1. When the .AERROR directive is assembled, error 667 is generated and the assembler is terminated with an error.
- 2. The .AERROR directive can be used to check values such as preprocessor variables.

# **Coding Example**

.AIF \&FLG eq 1
MOV R1,R10
MOV R2,R11
.AELSE
.AERROR ; When \&FLG is not 1, an error is generated.
.AENDI

### .EXITM Expansion Termination

### **Syntax**

 $\emptyset$ .EXITM

### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .EXITM mnemonic.

3. Operands

The operand field is not used.

### **Description**

- 1. .EXITM is the assembler directive that terminates an iterated expansion (.AREPEAT to .AENDR) or a conditional iterated expansion (.AWHILE to .AENDW).
- 2. Either expansion is terminated when this directive appears.
- 3. This directive is also used to exit from macro expansions. The location of this directive must be specified carefully when macro instructions and iterated expansion are combined.

Reference: Macro expansion

→ Programmer's Guide, 7.2, "Macro Function Directives"

# **Coding Example**

~

; 0 is set to COUNT. COUNT .ASSIGNA 0 ; An infinite loop (condition is always satisfied) is .AWHILE 1 EQ 1 ; specified. ADD R0,R1 ADD R2,R3 ; 1 is added to COUNT. COUNT .ASSIGNA \&COUNT+1 \&COUNT EQ 2 ; Condition: COUNT = 2 .AIF ; When the condition is satisfied .EXITM .AENDI ; .AWHILE expansion is terminated. .AENDW

 $\sim$ 

194

When COUNT is updated and satisfies the condition specified with the .AIF directive, .EXITM is assembled. When .EXITM is assembled, .AWHILE expansion is terminated.

The expansion results are as follows:

ADD R0,R1 When COUNT is 0
ADD R2,R3
ADD R0,R1 When COUNT is 1
ADD R2,R3

After this, COUNT becomes 2 and expansion is terminated.

# .ALIMIT Maximum Count Specification for .AWHILE Expansion in Preprocessor

### **Syntax**

Ø.ALIMIT <count>

### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .ALIMIT mnemonic.

3. Operands

Enter the maximum count of statement expansion.

### **Description**

- 1. During conditional iterated (.AWHILE to .AENDW) expansion, if the statement expansion count exceeds the maximum value specified by the .ALIMIT directive, warning 854 is generated and the expansion is terminated.
- 2. If the .ALIMIT directive is not specified, the maximum count is 65,535.

#### **Coding Example**

FLG: .ASSIGNA 0
.AWHILE \&FLG eq 0 ; Expansion is terminated after performed
NOP ; 20 times, and a warning message is output.
.AENDW

# Section 7 Macro Function

# 7.1 Overview of the Macro Function

The macro function allows commonly used sequences of instructions to be named and defined as one macro instruction. This is called a macro definition. Macro instructions are defined as follows:

A macro name is the name assigned to a macro instruction, and a macro body is the statements to be executed as the macro instruction.

Using a defined macro instruction by specifying the name is called a macro call. Macro instructions are called as follows:

```
<defined macro name>
```

An example of macro definition and macro call is shown below.

#### **Example:**

```
.MACRO SUM

; Processing to obtain the sum of R0, R1, R2,
MOV R0,R10
; and R3 is defined as macro instruction SUM.

ADD R1,R10
ADD R2,R10
ADD R3,R10
.ENDM

; This statement calls macro instruction SUM.
; Macro body MOV R0,R10
; ADD R1,R10
; ADD R2,R10
; ADD R3,R10
; is expanded from the macro instruction.
```

Parts of the macro body can be replaced when expanded by the following procedure:

#### 1. Macro definition

- a. Declare formal parameters in the .MACRO directive.
- b. Use the formal parameters in the macro body. Formal parameters must be identified in the macro body by placing a backslash (\) in front of them.

### 2. Macro call

Specify macro parameters in the macro call.

When the macro instruction is expanded, the formal parameters are replaced with their corresponding macro parameters.

### Example:

; Formal parameter ARG1 is defined. .MACRO SUM ARG1 ; ARG1 is referenced in the macro body. MOV R0, \ARG1 ADD R1,\**ARG1** ADD R2,\**ARG1** ADD R3,\ARG1 .ENDM SUM R10 ; This statement calls macro instruction SUM ; specifying macro parameter R10. ; The formal parameter in the macro body is ; replaced with the macro parameter, and MOV R0,R10 ADD R1,R10 ; ADD R2,R10 ADD R3,R10 is expanded.

# **7.2** Macro Function Directives

This assembler provides the following macro function directives.

.MACRO .ENDM	Defines a macro instruction.
.EXITM	Terminates macro instruction expansion.

#### .MACRO,.ENDM Macro Definition

### **Syntax**

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .MACRO or .ENDM mnemonic.

3. Operands

.MACRO: Enter the name and formal parameters for the macro instruction to be defined. When formal parameters are defined, their defaults can be defined (defaults can be omitted).

.ENDM: The operand filed is not used.

#### **Description**

- 1. .MACRO and .ENDM are the assembler directives that define a macro instruction (a sequence of source statements that are collectively named and handled together).
- 2. Macro definition

Naming as a macro instruction the source statements (macro body) between the .MACRO and .ENDM directives is called a macro definition.

3. Macro name

Macro names are the names assigned to macro instructions.

4. Formal parameters

Formal parameters are specified so that parts of the macro body can be replaced by specific parameters at expansion time. Formal parameters are replaced with the character strings (macro parameters) specified at macro expansion (macro call).

— Formal parameter syntax

The syntax for formal parameters is the same as that for symbols. The assembler distinguishes uppercase and lowercase letters.

Formal parameter reference

Formal parameters are used (referenced) at the part to be replaced in the macro body.

The syntax of formal parameter reference in macro bodies is as follows:

```
\<formal parameter name>['] *
```

To clearly distinguish the preprocessor variable name from the rest of the source statement, an apostrophe (') can be added.

Note: When using a Japanese version of MS-DOS, use \( \frac{1}{2} \) instead of \( \).

#### 5. Formal parameter defaults

Defaults for formal parameters can be specified in macro definitions. The default specifies the character string to replace the formal parameter when the corresponding macro parameter is omitted in a macro call.

The default must be enclosed by double quotation marks (") or angle brackets (<>) if any of the following characters are included in the default.

- Space
- Tab
- Comma (,)
- Semicolon (;)
- Double quotation marks (")
- Angle brackets (<>)

The assembler inserts defaults at macro expansion by removing the double quotation marks or angle brackets that enclose the character strings.

#### 6. Restrictions on macro definitions

- Macros cannot be defined in the following locations:
- Macro bodies (between .MACRO and .ENDM directives)
- Between .AREPEAT and .AENDR directives
- Between .AWHILE and .AENDW directives
- The .ENDM directive cannot be used within a macro body.
- No symbol can be inserted in the label field of the .ENDM directive. The .ENDM directive is ignored if its label field is not blank, but no error is generated in this case.

# **Coding Example**

~

.MACRO SUMMOV R0,R10ADD R1,R10Processing to obtain the sum of R0, R1, R2,and R3 is defined as macro instruction SUM.

ADD R2,R10 ADD R3,R10

. ENDM

~

; This statement calls macro instruction SUM

; Macro body MOV R0,R10; ADD R1,R10; ADD R2,R10

; ADD R3,R10 is expanded.

## .EXITM Expansion Termination

# **Syntax**

 $\emptyset$ .EXITM

### **Statement Elements**

1. Label

The label field is not used.

2. Operation

Enter the .EXITM mnemonic.

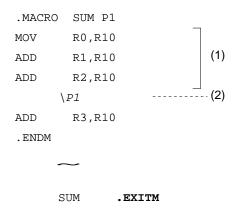
3. Operands

The operand field is not used.

## **Description**

- 1. .EXITM is the assembler directive that terminates a macro expansion. This directive can be specified within the macro body (between the .MACRO and .ENDM directives).
- 2. Expansion is terminated when this directive appears.
- 3. This directive is also used to exit from iterated expansions specified with the .AREPEAT or .AWHILE directive. The location of this directive must be specified carefully when macro instructions and iterated expansion are combined.

### **Coding Example**



.EXITM is expanded at (2) and macro expansion is terminated. Only the statements indicated by (1) are expanded.

# 7.3 Macro Body

The source statements between the .MACRO and .ENDM directives are called a macro body. The macro body is expanded and assembled by a macro call.

#### 1. Formal parameter reference

Formal parameters are used to specify the parts to be replaced with macro parameters at macro expansion.

The syntax of formal parameter reference in macro bodies is as follows:

```
\<formal parameter name>['] *
```

To clearly distinguish the formal parameter name from the rest of the source statement, add an apostrophe (').

Note: When using a Japanese version of MS-DOS, use \( \frac{1}{2} \) instead of \( \).

#### Coding example:

```
.MACRO PLUS1 P,P1 ; P and P1 are formal parameters.

ADD #1,\P1 ; Formal parameter P1 is referenced.

.SDATA "\P'1" ; Formal parameter P is referenced.

.ENDM

PLUS1 R,R1 ; PLUS1 is expanded.
```

Expanded results are as follows:

```
ADD #1,R1 ; Formal parameter P1 is referenced.
.SDATA "R1" ; Formal parameter P is referenced.
```

# 2. Preprocessor variable reference

Preprocessor variables can be referenced in macro bodies.

The syntax for preprocessor variable reference is as follows:

```
\&preprocessor variable name>['] *
```

To clearly distinguish the formal parameter name from the rest of the source statement, add an apostrophe (').

Note: When using a Japanese version of MS-DOS, use \( \frac{1}{2} \) instead of \( \).

### **Coding example:**

```
.MACRO
                   PLUS1
          ADD
                    #1,R\&V1
                                        ; Preprocessor variable V1 is referenced.
                   "\&V'1"
         .SDATA
                                        ; Preprocessor variable V is referenced.
         .ENDM
V
         .ASSIGNC "R"
                                        ; Preprocessor variable V is defined.
V1
         .ASSIGNA 1
                                        ; Preprocessor variable V1 is defined.
          PLUS1
                                        ; PLUS1 is expanded.
Expanded results are as follows:
                                        ; Preprocessor variable V1 is referenced.
          ADD
                    #1,R1
         .SDATA
                   "R1"
                                        ; Preprocessor variable V is referenced.
```

### 3. Macro generation number

The macro generation number facility is used to avoid the problem that symbols used within a macro body will be multiply defined if the macro is expanded multiple times. To avoid this problem, specify the macro generation number marker as part of any symbol used in a macro. This will result in symbols that are unique to each macro call.

The macro generation number marker is expanded as a 5-digit decimal number (between 00000 and 99999) unique to the macro expansion.

The syntax for specifying the macro generation number marker is as follows:

```
\@ *
```

Note: When using a Japanese version of MS-DOS, use ¥ instead of \.

Two or more macro generation number markers can be written in a macro body, and they will be expanded to the same number in one macro call.

# **CAUTION!**

Because macro generation number markers are expanded to numbers, they must not be written at the beginning of symbol names.

Reference: Programmer's Guide, 1.3.2, "Coding of Symbols"

# Coding example:

```
.MACRO RES_STR STR, Rn
          MOV.L
                   #str\@,\Rn
                   end_str\@
          BRA
          NOP
          .SDATA "\STR"
str\@
          .ALIGN 2
end\_str\@
          .ENDM
                                         Different symbols are generated each time
          RES_STR "ONE",R0
          RES_STR "TWO",R1
                                         RES_STR is expanded.
Expanded results are as follows:
                   #str00000,R0
          MOV.L
                   end_str00000
          BRA
          NOP
str00000 .SDATA "ONE"
          .ALIGN 2
end_str00000
                   #str00001,R1
          MOV.L
          BRA
                   end_str00001
          NOP
str00001 .SDATA
                 "TWO"
          .ALIGN 2
end_str00001
```

#### 4. Macro replacement processing exclusion

When a backslash (\) appears in a macro body, it specifies macro replacement processing. Therefore, a means for excluding this macro processing is required when it is necessary to use the backslash as an ASCII character.

The syntax for macro replacement processing exclusion is as follows:

Note: When using a Japanese version of MS-DOS, use ¥ instead of \.

The backslash and the parentheses will be removed in macro processing.

Coding example:

Expanded results are as follows:

```
MOV \# "\", R0 ; \is expanded as an ASCII character.
```

#### 5. Comments in macros

Comments in macro bodies can be coded as normal comments or as macro internal comments. When comments in the macro body are not required in the macro expansion code (to avoid repeating the same comment in the listing file), those comments can be coded as macro internal comments to suppress their expansion.

The syntax for macro internal comments is as follows:

```
\; <comment> *
```

Note: When using a Japanese version of MS-DOS, use \(\pm\) instead of \(\cdot\).

#### **Coding example:**

```
.MACRO PUSH RN

MOV.L \Rn,@-R15 \; \Rn is a register.

.ENDM

PUSH R0
```

Expanded results are as follows (the comment is not expanded):

```
MOV.L R0,@-R15
```

#### 6. Character string manipulation functions

Character string manipulation functions can be used in the body of a macro. The following character string manipulation functions are provided.

.LEN Character string length.
.INSTR Character string search.
.SUBSTR Character string substring.

References:

.LEN → Programmer's Guide, 7.5, "Character String Manipulation Functions", .LEN
.INSTR → Programmer's Guide, 7.5, "Character String Manipulation Functions", .INSTR
.SUBSTR → Programmer's Guide, 7.5, "Character String Manipulation Functions", .SUBSTR

#### 7.4 Macro Call

Expanding a defined macro instruction is called a macro call. The syntax for macro calls is as follows:

#### **Syntax**

```
[<symbol>] <macro name>[<macro parameter> [,<macro parameter> ...]]
```

## **Statement Elements**

1. Label

Enter a reference symbol if required.

2. Operation

Enter the macro name to be expanded. The macro name must have been already defined before a macro call.

3. Operands

Enter character strings as macro parameters to replace formal parameters at macro expansion. The formal parameters must have been declared in the macro definition with .MACRO.

## **Description**

1. Macro parameter specification

Macro parameters can be specified by either positional specification or keyword specification.

— Positional specification

The macro parameters are specified in the same order as that of the formal parameters declared in the macro definition.

Keyword specification

Each macro parameter is specified following its corresponding formal parameter, separated by an equal sign (=).

2. Macro parameter syntax

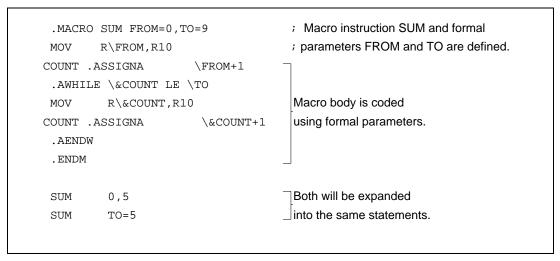
Macro parameters must be enclosed by double quotation marks (") or angle brackets (<>) if any of the following characters are included in the macro parameters:

- Space— Tab
- Comma (,)
- Semicolon (;)

- Double quotation marks (")
- Angle brackets (<>)

Macro parameters are inserted by removing the double quotation marks or angle brackets that enclose character strings at macro expansion.

## **Coding Example**



Expanded results are as follows (the formal parameters in the macro body are replaced with macro parameters):

MOV R0, R10
MOV R1, R10
MOV R2, R10
MOV R3, R10
MOV R4, R10
MOV R5, R10

# 7.5 Character String Manipulation Functions

This assembler provides the following character string manipulation functions.

.LEN	Counts the length of a character string.		
.INSTR	Searches for a character string.		
.SUBSTR	Extracts a character string.		

## .LEN Character String Length Count

## **Syntax**

```
.LEN[\emptyset]("<character string>")
```

## **Description**

- 1. .LEN counts the number of characters in a character string and replaces itself with the number of characters in decimal with no radix.
- Character strings are specified by enclosing the desired characters in double quotation marks
  ("). To specify a double quotation mark in a character string, enter two double quotation
  marks in succession.
- 3. Macro formal parameters and preprocessor variables can be specified in the character string as shown below.

```
.LEN("\<formal parameter>")
.LEN("\&eprocessor variable>") *
Note: When using a Japanese version of MS-DOS, use ¥ instead of \.
```

4. This function can only be used within a macro body (between .MACRO and .ENDM directives).

## **Coding Example:**

```
.MACRO RESERVE_LENGTH P1
.ALIGN 4
.SRES .LEN("\P1")
.ENDM
.ENDM
RESERVE_LENGTH ABCDEF
RESERVE_LENGTH ABC
```

#### Expanded results are as follows:

```
.ALIGN 4
.SRES 6 ; "ABCDEF" has six characters.
.ALIGN 4
.SRES 3 ; "ABC" has three characters.
```

HITACHI

211

#### .INSTR Character String Search

#### **Syntax**

```
.INSTR[Ø]("<character string 1>","<character string 2>"
[,<start position>])
```

#### **Description**

- 1. .INSTR searches character string 1 for character string 2, and replaces itself with the numerical value of the position of the found string (with 0 indicating the start of the string) in decimal with no radix. .INSTR is replaced with -1 if character string 2 does not appear in character string 1.
- 2. Character strings are specified by enclosing the desired characters in double quotation marks ("). To specify a double quotation mark in a character string, enter two double quotation marks in succession.
- 3. The <start position> parameter specifies the search start position as a numerical value, with 0 indicating the start of the string. Zero is used as default when this parameter is omitted.
- 4. Macro formal parameters and preprocessor variables can be specified in the character strings and as the start position as shown below.

```
.INSTR("\<formal parameter>", ...)
.INSTR("\&creation of MS-DOS, use ¥ instead of \.
```

5. This function can only be used within a macro body (between the .MACRO and .ENDM directives).

#### **Coding Example:**

```
.MACRO FIND_STR P1
.DATA.W .INSTR("ABCDEFG","\P1",0)
.ENDM

FIND_STR CDE
FIND_STR H

Expanded results are as follows:
.DATA.W 2 ; The start position of "CDE" is 2 (0 indicating the beginning of the string) in "ABCDEFG"
.DATA.W -1 ; "ABCDEFG" includes no "H".
```

#### . SUBSTR Character Substring Extraction

#### **Syntax**

```
.SUBSTR[\emptyset]("<character string>",<start position>,<extraction length>)
```

## Description

- 1. .SUBSTR extracts from the specified character string a substring starting at the specified start position of the specified length. .SUBSTR is replaced with the extracted character string enclosed by double quotation marks (").
- Character strings are specified by enclosing the desired characters in double quotation marks
   ("). To specify a double quotation mark in a character string, enter two double quotation
   marks in succession.
- 3. The value of the extraction start position must be 0 or greater. The value of the extraction length must be 1 or greater.
- 4. If illegal or inappropriate values are specified for the <start position> or <extraction length> parameters, this function is replaced with a blank space ("").
- 5. Macro formal parameters and preprocessor variables can be specified in the character string, and as the start position and extraction length parameters as shown below.

```
.SUBSTR("\<formal parameter>", ...)
.SUBSTR("\&cprocessor variable>", ...) *
Note: When using a Japanese version of MS-DOS, use ¥ instead of \.
```

6. This function can only be used within a macro body (between the .MACRO and .ENDM directives).

## **Coding Example:**

```
.MACRO RESERVE_STR P1=0,P2
.SDATA .SUBSTR("ABCDEFG",\P1,\P2)
.ENDM

RESERVE_STR 2,2
RESERVE_STR ,3 ; Macro parameter P1 is omitted.

Expanded results are as follows:
.SDATA "CD"
.SDATA "ABC"
```

## Section 8 Automatic Literal Pool Generation Function

## 8.1 Overview of Automatic Literal Pool Generation

To move 2-byte or 4-byte constant data (referred to below as a "literal") to a register, a literal pool (a collection of literals) must be reserved and referred to in PC relative addressing mode. For literal pool location, the following must be considered:

- Is data stored within the range that can be accessed by data move instructions?
- Is 2-byte data aligned to a 2-byte boundary and is 4-byte data aligned to a 4-byte boundary?
- Can data be shared by several data move instructions?
- Where in the program should the literal pool be located?

The assembler automatically generates from a single instruction a .DATA directive and a PC relative MOV or MOVA instruction, which moves constant data to a register.

For example, this function enables program (a) below to be coded as (b):

```
(a)

MOV.L DATA1,R0

MOV.L DATA2,R1

ALIGN 4

DATA1 .DATA.L H'12345678

DATA2 .DATA.L 500000

(b)

MOV.L #H'12345678,R0

MOV.L #500000,R1
```

## 8.2 Extended Instructions Related to Automatic Literal Pool Generation

The assembler automatically generates a literal pool corresponding to an extended instruction (MOV.W #imm, Rn; MOV.L #imm, Rn; or MOVA #imm, R0) and calculates the PC relative displacement value.

An extended instruction source statement is expanded to an executable instruction and literal data as shown in table 8-1.

**Table 8-1** Extended Instructions and Expanded Results

Extended Instruction	Expanded Result		
MOV.W #imm, Rn	MOV.W @(disp, PC), Rn and 2-byte literal data		
MOV.L #imm, Rn	MOV.L @(disp, PC), Rn and 4-byte literal data		
MOVA #imm, R0	MOVA @(disp, PC), R0 and 4-byte literal data		

## 8.3 Size Mode for Automatic Literal Pool Generation

Automatic literal pool generation has two modes: size specification mode and size selection mode. In size specification mode, a data move instruction (extended instruction) whose operation size is prespecified is used to generate a literal pool. In size selection mode, when a move instruction without size specification is written, the assembler automatically checks the imm operand value and selects a suitable-size move instruction.

Table 8-2 shows data move instructions and size mode.

Table 8-2 Data Move Instructions and Size Mode

Data Move Instruction	Size Specification Mode	Size Selection Mode
MOV #imm, Rn	Executable instruction	Selected by assembler
MOV.B #imm, Rn	Executable instruction	Executable instruction
MOV.W #imm, Rn	Extended instruction	Extended instruction
MOV.L #imm, Rn	Extended instruction	Extended instruction

#### **Size Specification Mode:**

In this mode, a data move instruction without size specification (MOV #imm,Rn) is handled as a normal executable instruction. This mode is used when -AUTO\_LITERAL is not specified as the command line option.

#### **Size Selection Mode:**

In this mode, when a data move instruction without size specification (MOV #imm,Rn) is written, the assembler checks the imm operand value and automatically generates a literal pool if necessary. The imm value is checked for the signed value range.

This mode is used when -AUTO\_LITERAL is specified as the command line option.

Table 8-3 shows the instructions selected depending on imm value range.

Table 8-3 Instructions Selected in Size Selection Mode

imm Specification	imm Value Range*	Selected Instruction		
Constant or back-reference absolute value	H'FFFFFF80 to H'0000007F (-128 to 127)	MOV.B #imm, Rn		
	H'FFFF8000 to H'FFFFFFFF (-32,768 to -129) H'00000080 to H'00007FFF (128 to 32,767)	MOV.W #imm, Rn Expansion result: [MOV.W @(disp, PC), Rn and 2-byte literal data]		
	H'80000000 to H'FFFF7FFF (-2,147,483,648 to -32,769) H'00008000 to H'7FFFFFFF (32,768 to 2,147,483,647)	MOV.L #imm, Rn Expansion result: [MOV.L @(disp, PC), Rn and 4-byte literal data]		
Relative value or forward- reference absolute value	Does not depend on imm value	MOV.L #imm, Rn Expansion result: [MOV.L @(disp, PC), Rn and 4-byte literal data]		

Note: The values in parentheses ( ) are decimal.

#### Reference:

#### -AUTO\_LITERAL

→ User's Guide, 2.2.8, "Automatic Literal Pool Output Command Line Option"

## 8.4 Literal Pool Output

The literal pool is output to one of the following locations:

- After an unconditional branch and its delay slot instruction
- Where a .POOL directive has been specified by the programmer

The assembler outputs the literal corresponding to an extended instruction to the nearest output location following the extended instruction. The assembler gathers the literals to be output as a literal pool.

#### **CAUTION!**

When a label is specified in a delay slot instruction, no literal pool will be output to the location following the delay slot.

#### 8.4.1 Literal Pool Output after Unconditional Branch

An example of literal pool output is shown below.

```
Source program
   .SECTION CD1, CODE, LOCATE=H'0000F000
CD1_START:
         MOV.L #H'FFFF0000,R0
         MOV.W #H'FF00,R1
         MOV.L #CD1_START,R2
                 #H'FF,R3
         VOM
         RTS
         MOV
                 R0,R10
         .END
\downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow
Automatic literal pool generation result (source list)
  1 0000F000 1 .SECTION CD1, CODE, LOCATE=H'0000F000
  2 0000F000 2 CD1 START
  3 0000F000 5004 3 MOV.L #H'FFFF0000,R0
4 0000F002 1103 4 MOV.W #H'FF00,R1
5 0000F004 5205 5 MOV.L #CD1_START,R2
                              MOV.L #H'FFFF0000,R0
                           MOV
  6 0000F006 6300 6
                                        #H'FF,R3
  7 0000F008 000B 7
                              RTS
  8 0000F00A 6A03 8
                              MOV
                                        R0,R10
        **** BEGIN-POOL ****
 10 0000F00C FF00 DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 4
 11 0000F00E 0000 ALIGNMENT CODE
 12 0000F010 FFFF0000 DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 3
13 0000F014 0000F000 DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 5
               END-POOL ****
 15 9 .END
```

## 8.4.2 Literal Pool Output to the .POOL Location

If literal pool output location after unconditional branches is not available within the valid displacement range (because the program has a small number of unconditional branches), the assembler outputs error 402. In this case, a .POOL directive must be specified within the valid displacement range.

The valid displacement range is as follows:

• Word-size operation: 0 to 511 bytes

• Long word-size operation: 0 to 1023 bytes

When a literal pool is output to a .POOL location, a branch instruction is also inserted to jump over the literal pool.

An example of literal pool output is shown below.

```
Source program
           .SECTION CD1, CODE, LOCATE=H'0000F000
 CD1_START
          MOV.L
                  #H'FFFF0000,R0
          MOV.W #H'FF00,R1
          MOV.L
                  #CD1_START,R2
          MOV
                    #H'FF,R3
          .POOL
.END
              \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow
 Automatic literal pool generation result (source list)
   1 0000F000 1 .SECTION CD1, CODE, LOCATE=H'0000F000
   2 0000F000 2 CD1_START:
   3 0000F000 5012 3 MOV.L
                                         #H'FFFF0000,R0
   4 0000F002 110E 4
5 0000F004 5216 5
                              MOV.W #H'FF00,R1
                              MOV.L #CD1_START,R2
                          MOV
   6 0000F006 6300 6
                                        #H'FF,R3
   7 0000F008 7 .POOL
         **** BEGIN-POOL ****
   9 0000F008 A006 BRA TO END-POOL
  10 0000F00A 0009 NOP
11 0000F00C FF00 DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 4
12 0000F00E 0000 ALIGNMENT CODE
  13 0000F010 FFFF0000 DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 3 14 0000F014 0000F000 DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 5
        **** END-POOL ****
```

## 8.5 Literal Sharing

When the literals for several extended instructions are gathered into a literal pool, the assembler makes the extended instructions share identical immediate data.

The following operand forms can be identified and shared:

- Symbol
- Constant
- Symbol ± constant

In addition to the above, expressions that are determined to have the same value at assembly processing may be shared.

However, extended instructions having different operation sizes do not share literal data even when they have the same immediate data.

An example of literal data sharing among extended instructions is shown below.

```
Source program
          .SECTION CD1, CODE, LOCATE=H'0000F000
CD1_START:
          MOV.L #H'FFFF0000,R0
          MOV.W #H'FF00,R1
          MOV.L #H'FFFF0000,R2
          VOM
                    #H'FF,R3
          RTS
          MOV
                     R0,R10
          .END
               \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow
Automatic literal pool generation result (source list)
  1 0000F000 1 .SECTION CD1, CODE, LOCATE=H'0000F000
  2 0000F000 2 CD1_START:
  3 0000F000 5004 3 MOV.L #H'FFFF0000,R0
  4 0000F000 5004 5 MOV.L #H'FF0000,R0
4 0000F002 1103 4 MOV.W #H'FF00,R1
5 0000F004 5204 5 MOV.L #H'FFFF0000,R2
6 0000F006 6300 6 MOV #H'FF,R3
7 0000F008 000B 7 RTS
8 0000F00A 6A03 8 MOV R0,R10
          **** BEGIN-POOL ****
 10 0000F00C FF00 DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 4
                              ALIGNMENT CODE
 11 0000F00E 0000
 12 0000F010 FFFF0000 DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 3,5
          **** END-POOL ****
 13
 14 9 .END
```

## 8.6 Literal Pool Output Suppression

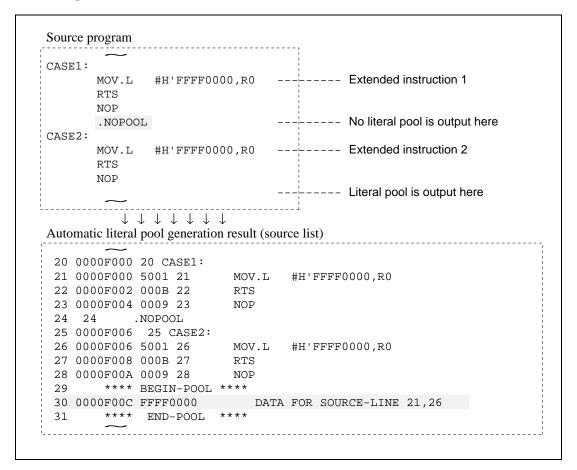
When a program has too many unconditional branches, the following problems may occur:

- Many small literal pools are output
- Literals are not shared

In these cases, suppress literal pool output as shown below.

```
<delayed branch instruction>
<delay slot instruction>
.NOPOOL
```

#### Example



## 8.7 Notes on Automatic Literal Pool Output

- 1. If an error occurs when an extended instruction is written
  - a. Extended instructions must not be specified in delay slots (error 151).
  - b. Extended instructions must not be specified in relative sections having a boundary alignment value of less than 2 (error 152).
  - c. MOV.L #imm, Rn or MOVA #imm, R0 must not be specified in relative sections having a boundary alignment value of less than 4 (error 152).
- 2. If an error occurs when a .POOL directive is written

.POOL directives must not be written after unconditional branches (error 522).

- 3. If an error occurs when a .NOPOOL directive is written
  - .NOPOOL directives are valid only when written after delay slot instructions. If written at other locations, the .NOPOOL directive causes error 521.
- 4. If the displacement of an executable instruction exceeds the valid range when an extended instruction is expanded

The assembler generates a literal pool and outputs error 402 for the instruction having a displacement outside the valid range.

Solution: Move the literal pool output location (for example, by the .NOPOOL directive), or change the location or addressing mode of the instruction causing the error.

5. If the literal pool output location cannot be found

If the assembler cannot find a literal pool output location satisfying the following conditions in respect to the extended instruction,

- Same file
- Same section
- Forward direction

the assembler outputs, at the end of the section which includes the extended instruction, the literal pool and a BRA instruction with a NOP instruction in the delay slot to jump around the literal pool, and outputs warning 876.

- 6. If the displacement from the extended instruction exceeds the valid range
  - If the displacement of the literal pool from the extended instruction exceeds the valid range, error 402 is generated.
  - Solution: Output the literal pool within the valid range (for example, using the .POOL directive.)
- 7. Differences between size specification mode and size selection mode

The former version of the assembler can only use the size specification mode, but the size selection mode is added to this new assembler version. If the source program created before for the former version is assembled in the size selection mode by the new version, the imm values of data move instructions without size specifications will differ by H'00000080 to H'000000FF (128 to 255) from these asembled by the former version.

An example of source listing output in the size specification mode and size selection mode is shown below.

```
Example:
Source program
         .SECTION CD1, CODE, LOCATE=H'0000F000
         MOV.L #H'FF,R0
         MOV.W #H'FF,R1
         MOV.B
                  #H'FF,R2
         MOV.B #H'FF, R2
         RTS
         MOV
                 R0,R10
         . END
Automatic literal pool output in size specification mode (source listing)
 1 0000F000 1 .SECTION CD1, CODE, LOCATE=H'0000F000
 2 0000F000 5004 2 MOV.L #H'FF,R0
3 0000F002 1103 3 MOV.W #H'FF,R1
4 0000F004 63FF 4 MOV.B #H'FF,R2
5 0000F006 63FF 5 MOV #H'FF,R3
  6 0000F008 000B 6 RTS
7 0000F00A 6A03 7 MOV
                                       R0,R10
 8 ***** BEGIN-POOL *****
9 0000F00C 00FF DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 3 10 0000F00E 0000 ALIGNMENT CODE
11 0000F010 000000FF DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 2
12 **** END-POOL ****
       .END
13 8
The contents of R3 is H'FFFFFFF.
Automatic literal pool output in size selection mode (source listing)
 1 0000F000 1 .SECTION CD1,CODE,LOCATE=H'0000F000
2 0000F000 5004 2 MOV.L #H'FF,R0
3 0000F002 1103 3 MOV.W #H'FF,R1
4 0000F004 63FF 4 MOV.B #H'FF,R2
  5 0000F006 1102 5 MOV #H'FF,R3
  6 0000F008 000B 6 RTS
7 0000F00A 6A03 7 MOV
                                     R0,R10
     **** BEGIN-POOL ****
 9 0000F00C 00FF DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 3,5
 10 0000F00E 0000 ALIGNMENT CODE
11 0000F010 000000FF DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 2
12 ***** END-POOL *****
              .END
The contents of R3 is H'000000FF.
```

## Section 9 SH-DSP Instructions

## 9.1 Program Contents

#### 9.1.1 Source Statements

The SH-DSP instructions are classified into two types: executable instructions and DSP instructions. The DSP instructions have a different instruction set and description format from those for the SH-series microcomputer. For the DSP instructions, many operations can be included in one statement. The DSP instruction operation is as follows:

- DSP operation: Specifies operations between DSP registers.
   PABS, PADD, PADDC, PAND, PCLR, PCMP, PCOPY, PDEC, PDMSB, PINC, PLDS, PMULS, PNEG, POR, PRND, PSHA, PSHL, PSTS, PSUB, PSUBC, PXOR
- 2. X data transfer operation: Specifies data transfer between a DSP register and X data memory. MOVX, NOPX
- Y data transfer operation: Specifies data transfer between a DSP register and Y data memory. MOVY, NOPY
- Single data transfer operation: Specifies data transfer between a DSP register and memory.
   MOVS

#### Reference:

Executable instructions

→ Programmer's Guide, 3, "Executable Instructions"

## 9.1.2 Parallel Operation Instructions

Parallel operation instructions specify DSP operations as well as data transfer between a DSP register and X or Y data memory at the same time. The instruction size is 32 bits. The description format is as follows:

[<label>][Ø<DSP operation part>][Ø<data transfer part>][<comment>]

#### **DSP Operation Part Description Format:**

[<condition $>\Delta$ ]<DSP operation $>\Delta$ <operand>[ $\Delta$ <DSP operation $>\Delta$ <operand>]

- Condition: Specifies how parallel operation instruction is executed as follows:
  - DCT: The instruction is executed when the DC bit is 1.
  - DCF: The instruction is executed when the DC bit is 0.
- DSP operation: Specifies DSP operation.

Only the pairs of the two instructions (PADD and PMULS, PSUB and PMULS) can be combined.

#### **Data Transfer Part Description Format:**

```
[<X data transfer operation>[Ø<operand>]]
[Ø<Y data transfer operation>[Ø<operand>]]
```

Be sure to specify X data transfer and Y data transfer in this order. Inputting an instruction is not required when the data move instruction is NOPX or NOPY.

#### **Example:**

```
        Label1:
        PADD A0,M0,A0 PMULS X0,Y0,M0
        MOVX.W @R4+,X0 MOVY.W @R6+,Y0
        ;DSP Instruction

        Label
        DSP operation part
        Data transfer part
        Comment

        DSP operation part
        DSP operation part
        Data transfer part

        PCMP X1, M0
        MOVX.W @R4, X0
        Y Memory transfer is omitted

        DSP operation part
        Data transfer part

        Comment
```

#### 9.1.3 Data Move Instructions

Two types of data move instructions are available: combination of X data memory transfer and Y data memory transfer, and single data transfer. The description formats are as follows:

## Combination of X Data Memory Move and Y Data Memory Move Instructions:

```
[<label>][\emptyset<X data transfer operation>[\emptyset<operand>]] [\emptyset<Y data transfer operation>[\emptyset<operand>]][<comment>]
```

Be sure to specify X data memory transfer and Y data memory transfer in this order. Inputting an instruction is not required when the data move instruction is NOPX or NOPY. Note that both X data memory and Y data memory cannot be omitted, unlike the parallel operation instruction.

#### Example:

```
LABEL2: MOVX.L @R4,X0 ; Data move instruction (Y data memory transfer is omitted)

MOVX.W @R4,X0 MOVY.W @R6+, Y0
```

#### **Single Data Move Instruction:**

```
[<label>][\emptyset<single data transfer operation>\emptyset<operand>][<comment>] Specifies the MOVS instruction.
```

## Example:

LABEL3: MOVS.W @-R2,A0 ; Single data transfer

## 9.1.4 Coding of Source Statements Across Multiple Lines

For the DSP instructions, many operations can be included in one statement, and therefore, source statements become long and complicated. To make programs easy to read, source statements for DSP instructions can be written across multiple lines by separating between an operand and an operation, in addition to separating by a comma between operands.

Write source statements across multiple lines using the following procedure.

- 1. Insert a new line between an operand and an operation.
- 2. Insert a plus sign (+) in the first column of the next line.
- 3. Continue writing the source statement following the plus sign.

Spaces and tabs can be inserted following the plus sign.

## Example:

	PADD	A0,M0,X0
+	PMULS	A1,Y1,M0
+	MOVX	@R4,x0
+	MOVY	@R6,Y1

; A single source statement is written across four lines.

## 9.2 DSP Instructions

## 9.2.1 DSP Operation Instructions

Table 9-1 lists DSP instructions in mnemonic.

**Table 9-1 DSP Instructions in Mnemonic** 

Instruction Name	Mnemonic
DSP arithmetic operation instructions	PADD, PSUB, PCOPY, PDMSB, PINC, PNEG, PMULS, PADDC, PSUBC, PCMP, PDEC, PABS, PRND, PCLR, PLDS, PSTS
DSP logic operation instructions	POR, PAND, PXOR
DSP shift operation instructions	PSHA, PSHL

## **Operation Size:**

For the DSP operation instructions, operation size cannot be specified.

## **Addressing Mode:**

Table 9-2 lists addressing modes for the DSP operation instructions.

**Table 9-2** Addressing Modes for DSP Operation Instructions

Addressing Mode	Description Format
DSP register direct	Dp (DSP register name)
Immediate data	#imm

## • DSP register direct

Table 9-3 lists registers that can be specified in DSP register direct addressing mode. For Sx, Sy, Dz, Du, Se, Sf, and Dg, refer to table 9-5, DSP Operation Instructions.

**Table 9-3** Registers that Can Be Specified in DSP Register Direct Addressing Mode

**DSP** Register

		Α0	<b>A</b> 1	MO	M1	X0	<b>X1</b>	Y0	Y1
Dp	Sx	Yes	Yes			Yes	Yes		
	Sy			Yes	Yes			Yes	Yes
	Dz	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Du	Yes	Yes			Yes		Yes	
	Se		Yes			Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Sf		Yes			Yes		Yes	Yes
	Dg	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes				

## Immediate data

Immediate data can be specified for the first operand of the PSHA and PSHL instructions. The following items can be specified:

— Value type

Constants, symbols, or expressions can be specified.

— Symbol types

Symbols including relative symbols and import symbols can be specified as immediate data.\*

— Value range

Table 9-4 lists the specifiable value ranges.

Table 9-4 **Ranges of Immediate Data** 

Instruction	Range
PSHA instruction	H'FFFFFE0 to H'00000020 (-32 to 32)
PSHL instruction	H'FFFFFF0 to H'00000010 (-16 to 16)

Note: When a relative symbol or import symbol is specified as immediate data, the linkage editor checks the value in the rage from H'FFFFFC0 to H'0000003F (-64 to 63).

#### **Combination of Multiple DSP Operation Instructions:**

The PADD instruction and the PMULS instruction, or the PSUB instruction and the PMULS instruction can be specified in combination. These two types of combinations are basically one DSP instruction. The PADD (or PSUB) operand and a PMULS operand are separately described so that programs can be read easily.

## Example:

```
PADD A0,M0,A0 PMULS X0,Y0,M0 NOPX MOVY.W @R6+, Y0 PSUB A1,M1,A1 PMULS X1,Y1,M1 MOVX @R4+,X0 NOPY
```

Note: Warning 701 is displayed if the same register is specified as the destination registers when multiple DSP operation instructions are specified in combination.

#### Example:

```
PADD A0,M0,A0 PMULS X0,Y0,A0 \rightarrow Warning 701
```

#### **Conditional DSP Operation Instructions:**

Conditional DSP operation instructions specify if the program is executed according to the DC bit of the DSR register.

DCT: When the DC bit is 1, the instruction is executed. DCF: When the DC bit is 0, the instruction is executed.

Conditional DSP operation instructions are the following:

PADD, PAND, PCLR, PCOPY, PDEC, PDMSB, PINC, PLDS, PNEG, POR, PSHA, PSHL, PSTS, PSUB, PXOR

#### **DSP Operation Instruction List:**

Table 9-5 lists DSP operation instructions. For the registers that can be specified as Sx, Sy, Dz, Du, Se, Sf, and Dg, refer to table 9-3, Registers that Can Be Specified in DSP Register Direct Addressing Mode.

**Table 9-5 DSP Operation Instructions** 

Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Addressing Mode
PABS	Sx, Dz		
PABS	Sx, Dz		
PADD	Sx, Sy, Dz		
PADD	Sx, Sy, Du	PMULS	Se, Sf, Dg
PADDC	Sx, Sy, Dz		
PAND	Sx, Sy, Dz		
PCLR	Dz		
PCMP	Sx, Sy		
PCOPY	Sx, Dz		
PCOPY	Sy, Dz		
PDEC	Sx, Dz		
PDEC	Sy, Dz		
PDMSB	Sx, Dz		
PDMSB	Sy, Dz		
PINC	Sx, Dz		
PINC	Sy, Dz		
PLDS	Dz, MACH		
PLDS	Dz, MACL		
PMULS	Se, Sf, Dg		
PNEG	Sx, Dz		
PNEG	Sy, Dz		
POR	Sx, Sy, Dz		
PRND	Sx, Dz		
PRND	Sy, Dz		
PSHA	#imm, Dz		
PSHA	Sx, Sy, Dz		
PSHL	#imm, Dz		
PSHL	Sx, Sy, Dz		
PSTS	MACH, Dz		
PSTS	MACL, Dz		
PSUB	Sx, Sy, Dz		
	-		

**Table 9-5 DSP Operation Instructions (cont)** 

Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	Mnemonic	Addressing Mode
PSUB	Sx, Sy, Du	PMULS	Se, Sf, Dg
PSUBC	Sx, Sy, Dz		
PXOR	Sx, Sy, Dz		

#### **9.2.2 Data Move Instructions**

#### **Mnemonics:**

Two types of data move instructions are available: dual memory move instructions and single memory move instructions.

Dual memory move instructions specify data move, at the same time, between x memory and a DSP register, and between Y memory and a DSP register.

Single memory move instructions specify data move between arbitrary memory and a DSP register. Table 9-6 lists data move instructions in mnemonic.

**Table 9-6 Data Move Instructions in Mnemonic** 

Classification		Mnemonic	
Dual memory move	X memory move	NOPX MOVX	
	Y memory move	NOPY MOVY	
Single memory move		MOVS	

## **Operation Size:**

NOPX and NOPY instructions: Operation size cannot be specified.

MOVX and MOVY instructions: Only word size (.W) can be specified. If omitted, word size

is specified.

MOVS instruction: Word size (.W) or long word size (.L) can be specified. If

omitted, long word size is specified.

#### **Addressing Mode:**

Table 9-7 lists addressing modes that can be specified for the data move instructions.

**Table 9-7** Addressing Modes of Data Move Instructions

Addressing mode	Description
DSP register direct	Dz
Register indirect	@Az
Register indirect with post-increment	@Az+
Register indirect with index/post-increment	@Az+Iz
Register indirect with pre-decrement	@-Az

Register indirect with index/post-increment is a special addressing mode for the DSP data move instructions. In this mode, after referring to the contents indicated by register Az, register Az contents are incremented by the value of the Iz register.

## Registers that Can Be Specified in Addressing Modes:

Table 9-8 lists registers that can be specified in the DSP register direct, register indirect, register indirect with post-increment, register indirect with index/post-increment, and register indirect with pre-decrement addressing modes. For Dx, Dy, Ds, Da, Ax, Ay, As, Ix, Iy, and Is, refer to table 9-9, Data Move Instructions.

Table 9-8 Registers that Can Be Specified in Addressing Modes for Data Move Instructions

		SH Register						DSP Register											
		R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	R8	R9	Α0	<b>A1</b>	MO	M1	X0	X1	Y0	Y1	A0G	A1G
Dz	Dx													Yes	Yes				
	Dу															Yes	Yes		
	Ds									Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Da									Yes	Yes								
Az	Ax			Yes	Yes														
	Ау					Yes	Yes												
	As	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes														
lz	lx							Yes											
	ly								Yes										
	ls							Yes											

Note: Warning 703 is displayed if the destination register for the DSP instruction and the destination register for the data transfer instruction are the same register, and if the instructions are in the same statement.

## Example:

```
PADD A0,M0,\underline{\text{Y0}} NOPX MOVY.W @R6+,\underline{\text{Y0}} \rightarrow Warning 703
```

## **Data Move Instruction List:**

Table 9-9 lists data move instructions. For registers that can be specified for Dx, Dy, Ds, Da, Ax, Ay, As, Ix, Iy, and Is, refer to table 9-8, Registers that Can Be Specified in Addressing Modes for Data Move Instructions.

**Table 9-9 Data Move Instructions** 

Classification	Mnemonic	Addressing Mode		
X data move instructions	NOPX			
	MOVX.W	@Ax, Dx		
	MOVX.W	@Ax+, Dx		
	MOVX.W	@Ax+lx, Dx		
	MOVX.W	Da, @Ax		
	MOVX.W	Da, @Ax+		
	MOVX.W	Da, @Ax+Ix		
Y data move instructions	NOPY			
	MOVY.W	@Ay, Dy		
	MOVY.W	@Ay+, Dy		
	MOVY.W	@Ay+ly, Dy		
	MOVY.W	Da, @Ay		
	MOVY.W	Da, @Ay+		
	MOVY.W	Da, @Ay+Iy		
Single data move instructions	MOVS.W	@-As, Ds		
	MOVS.W	@As, Ds		
	MOVS.W	@As+, Ds		
	MOVS.W	@As+Is, Ds		
	MOVS.W	Ds, @-As		
	MOVS.W	Ds, @As		
	MOVS.W	Ds, @As+		
	MOVS.W	Ds, @As+Is		
	MOVS.L	@-As, Ds		
	MOVS.L	@As, Ds		
	MOVS.L	@As+, Ds		
	MOVS.L	@As+Is, Ds		
	MOVS.L	Ds, @-As		
	MOVS.L	Ds, @As		
	MOVS.L	Ds, @As+		
·	MOVS.L	Ds, @As+Is		

## 9.3 Notes on Executable Instructions

#### **Displacement Value Range:**

The PC-relative displacement value for the LDRS and LDRE instructions must be within the range from H'FFFFF00 to F'000000FE (-256 to 254). If a symbol is specified as an operand for these instructions, the symbol location must be within the above range in PC-relative mode.

#### **Immediate Value Range:**

The immediate value for the SETRC instruction must be within the range from H'00000001 to H'000000FF (1 to 255). If 0 is specified, warning 835 is output and 0 is set in the object code. In this case, the repeat count becomes one.

#### Note:

If an external reference symbol is specified as the immediate value for the SETRC instruction, the linkage editor checks the range from H'00000000 to H'000000FF (0 to 255).

#### Reference:

Executable instructions

→ Programmer's Guide, 3, Executable Instructions

#### RS and RE Register Setting:

The repeat start address and end address are set in the RS and RE registers by the LDRS and LDRE instructions, respectively. The address values depend on the number of instructions in the repeat loop. Table 9-10 shows the number of instructions in the repeat loop and address setting.

Table 9-10 Number of Instructions in Repeat Loop and Address Setting

#### **Number of Instructions** Register One Two Three **Four or More** RS register Repeat\_Start0 + 8 Repeat\_Start0 + 6 Repeat\_Start0 + 4 Repeat\_Start RE register Repeat\_Start0 + 4 Repeat\_Start0 + 4 Repeat\_Start0 + 4 Repeat\_End3 + 4

- Repeat\_Start0: Address of the instruction before the repeat start address
- Repeat\_Start: Repeat start address
- Repeat End3: Address of the location three instructions before the repeat end address

An example of RS and RE register setting is shown below.

#### Example:

```
; When two instructions are in the repeat loop
```

```
LDRS RptStart0 + 6 ; Repeat start address setting

LDRE RptStart0 + 4 ; Repeat end address setting
```

SETRC #10 ; Repeat count setting

RptStart0: ; Address of the instruction before the repeat start

; address

NOP

PADD A0,M0,A0 ; Repeat start address PCMP X1,M0 ; Repeat end address

## ; When four instructions are in the repeat loop

```
LDRS RptStart ; Repeat start address setting
LDRE RptEnd3 + 4 ; Repeat end address setting
```

SETRC #10 ; Repeat count setting

NOP

RptStart: ; Repeat start address

PADD A0,M0,A0

RptEnd3: ; Address of the location three instructions before

; the repeat end address

PSUB A1,M1,A1
PMULS X0,Y0,M0
PINC X0,A1

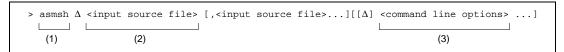
PCMP X1,M0 ; Repeat end address

# User's Guide

## Section 1 Executing the Assembler

## 1.1 Command Line Format

To start the assembler, enter a command line with the following format when the host computer operating system is in the input wait state.



- (1) Assembler start command.
- (2) Name of input source file. Multiple source files can be specified at the same time.
- (3) Command line options, which specify the assembly method in more detail.

#### **CAUTION!**

When multiple source files are specified on the command line, the unit of assembly processing will be the concatenation of the specified files in the specified order.

In this case, the .END directive must appear only in the last file.

## **Supplement:**

The assembler returns the operating system a return code that reports whether or not the assembly processing terminated normally. The return value indicates the level of the errors occurred as follows.

Normal termination	0	
Warnings occurred	0	
Errors occurred	MS-DOS:	2
	UNIX:	1
Fatal error occurred	MS-DOS:	4
	UNIX:	1

The return code can be changed with -ABORT.

## Reference:

-ABORT

→ User's Guide, 2.2.6, "Assembler Execution Command Line Options," -ABORT

## 1.2 File Specification Format

Files handled by the assembler are specified in the following format.

```
<file name>.[<file format>]
```

The term "file name" as used in this manual normally refers to both the file name and the file format.

## Example:

```
(File name)
file.src .... A file with the file name file and the file format src.
prog.obj .... A file with the file name prog and the file format obj.
```

The file format is used as an identifier to distinguish the contents of the file. Thus two files with differing formats are different files even if the file name is the same.

#### Example:

```
\begin{array}{l} \mathtt{file.src} \\ \mathtt{file.obj} \end{array} \text{ These file names specify different files.}
```

The assembler handles the following types of file.

#### • Source file

This is a source program file. If a source program file is specified without the file format, the file format src will be supplied.

## • Object file

This is an output destination file for object modules. If an object file is specified without the file format, the file format obj will be supplied. If an object file is not specified to the assembler, a file with the same name as the source file (the first file) and with the file format obj\* will be used.

#### • Listing file

This is an output destination file for assemble listings. If a listing file is specified without the file format, the extension lis will be supplied. If a listing file is not specified to the assembler, a file with the same name as the source file (the first file) and with the file format lis\* will be used.

Note: When MS-DOS is used, the file format is in uppercase letters.

## 1.3 SHCPU Environment Variable

The assembler assembles the program for the CPU specified by the SHCPU environment variable. The following shows how to specify the environment variable.

#### For UNIX:

• C Shell

```
setenv SHCPU <target CPU>
```

• Bourne/Korn Shell

```
SHCPU=<target CPU>
export SHCPU
```

## For MS-DOS:

```
SET SHCPU=<target CPU>
```

The target CPU can be selected from SH1, SH2, SH3, SH3E, and SHDSP.

The priority of target CPU specification is in the order of -CPU, .CPU directive, and SHCPU environment variable.

Note: Be sure to specify this environment variable in uppercase letters.

## Section 2 Command Line Options

### 2.1 Overview of Command Line Options

Command line options are detailed specifications of the assembly processing. Table 2-1 shows an overview of the command line options.

**Table 2-1 Command Line Options** 

Section Number	Command Line Option	Function	
2.2.1	Target CPU specifications		
	-CPU	Specifies target CPU	
2.2.2	Object module specifications		
	-[NO]OBJECT	Controls output of object module	
	-[NO]DEBUG	Controls output of debugging information	
	-ENDIAN	Selects big endian or little endian	
2.2.3	Assembly listing specifications		
	-[NO]LIST	Controls output of assembly listing	
	-[NO]SOURCE	Controls output of source program listing	
	-[NO]CROSS_REFERENCE	Controls output of cross-reference listing	
	-[NO]SECTION	Controls output of section information listing	
	-[NO]SHOW	Controls output of part of source program listing	
	-LINES	Specifies the number of lines in assemble listing	
	-COLUMNS	Specifies the number of columns in assemble listing	
2.2.4	2.2.4 File inclusion function specifications		
	-INCLUDE	Specifies the include file directory	
2.2.5	Conditional assembly specifications		
	-ASSIGNA	Defines integer preprocessor variable	
	-ASSIGNC	Defines character preprocessor variable	
	-DEFINE	Defines replacement character string	
2.2.6	Assembler execution specifications		
	-EXPAND	Outputs preprocessor expansion result	
	-ABORT	Changes the error level at which the assembler is abnormally terminated	

**Table 2-1** Command Line Options (cont)

Section Number	Command Line Option	Function	
2.2.7	Japanese character description	n specifications	
	-SJIS	Interprets Japanese characters in source file as shift JIS code	
	-EUC	Interprets Japanese characters in source file as EUC code	
	-OUTCODE	Specifies the Japanese code for output to object code	
2.2.8	Automatic literal pool generation specifications		
	-AUTO_LITERAL	Specifies size mode for automatic literal pool generation	
2.2.9	Command line specifications		
	-SUBCOMMAND	Inputs command line from a file	

### **Supplement:**

The assemble listing is a listing to which the results of the assembly processing are output, and consists of a source program listing, a cross-reference listing, and a section information listing.

References: See appendix C, "Assemble Listing Example", for a detailed description of the assemble listing.

### 2.2 Command Line Option Reference

### 2.2.1 Target CPU Command Line Option

This assembler provides the following command line option concerned with the target CPU.

**-CPU** This command line option specifies the target CPU.

### -CPU Target CPU Specification

### **Syntax**

-CPU=<target CPU>

### **Description**

- 1. The -CPU option specifies the target CPU for the source program to be assembled.
- 2. The following CPUs can be specified.
  - SH1
  - SH2
  - SH3
  - SH3E
  - SH-DSP

### **Relationship with Assembler Directives**

Command Line Option	Assembler Directive	SHCPU Environment Variable	Result
-CPU	(regardless of any specification)	(no specification)	Target CPU specified by - CPU
(no specification)	.CPU <target cpu=""></target>	(no specification)	Target CPU specified by .CPU
	(no specification)	SHCPU = <target cpu=""></target>	Target CPU specified by SHCPU environment variable
		(no specification)	SH1

References: Target CPU

→ Programmer's Guide, 4.2.1, "Target CPU Assembler Directive," .CPU

SHCPU environment variable

→ User's Guide, 1.3, "SHCPU Environment Variable"

### 2.2.2 Object Module Command Line Options

This assembler provides the following command line options concerned with object modules.

-OBJECT -NOOBJECT	These command line options control output of an object module.
-DEBUG -NODEBUG	These command line options control output of debug information.
-ENDIAN	This command line option selects big endian or little endian.

#### -OBJECT

### -NOOBJECT Object Module Output Control

### **Syntax**

-OBJECT [= <object output file>]
-NOOBJECT

The abbreviated forms are indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- 1. The -OBJECT option specifies output of an object module.
  - The -NOOBJECT option specifies no output of an object module.
- 2. The object output file specifies the output destination for the object module.
- 3. When the object output file parameter is omitted, the assembler takes the following actions:
  - If the file format is omitted:
    - The file format obj is supplied. \*
  - If the specification is completely omitted:
    - The file format obj is appended to the name of the input source file (the first specified source file). \*

Note: When MS-DOS is used, the file format is in uppercase letters.

### **CAUTION!**

Do not specify the same file for the input source file and the output object file. If the same file is specified, the contents of the input source file will be lost.

### **Relationship with Assembler Directives**

The assembler gives priority to specifications made with command line options.

Command Line Option	Assembler Directive	Result
-OBJECT	(regardless of any specification)	An object module is output.
-NOOBJECT	(regardless of any specification)	An object module is not output.
(no specification)	OUTPUT OBJ	An object module is output.
	OUTPUT NOOBJ	An object module is not output.
	(no specification)	An object module is output.

#### -DEBUG

### -NODEBUG Debug Information Output Control

### **Syntax**

- -DEBUG
- -NODEBUG

The abbreviated forms are indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

1. The -DEBUG option specifies output of debug information.

The -NODEBUG option specifies no output of debug information.

2. The -DEBUG and -NODEBUG options are only valid in cases where an object module is being output.

References: Object module output

- → Programmer's Guide, 4.2.6, "Object Module Assembler Directives", .OUTPUT
- → User's Guide, 2.2.2, "Object Module Command Line Options",
- -OBJECT -NOOBJECT

### **Relationship with Assembler Directives**

The assembler gives priority to specifications made with command line options.

Command Line Option	Assembler Directive	Result
-DEBUG	(regardless of any specification)	Debug information is output.
-NODEBUG	(regardless of any specification)	Debug information is not output.
(no specification)	.OUTPUT DBG	Debug information is output.
	OUTPUT NODBG	Debug information is not output.
	(no specification)	Debug information is not output.

### **Supplement:**

Debug information is information required when debugging a program using the simulator/debugger or the emulator, and is part of the object module. Debug information includes information about source statement lines and information about symbols.

### -ENDIAN Big Endian or Little Endian Selection

### **Syntax**

```
-ENDIAN[=<endian>]
Endian:{BIG|LITTLE}
```

The abbreviated form is indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- 1. The -ENDIAN option selects big endian or little endian for the target CPU.
- 2. The default is big endian.

### **Relationship with Assembler Directives**

The assembler gives priority to specifications made with command line options.

Command Line Option	Assembler Directive	Result
-ENDIAN=BIG	(regardless of any specification)	Assembles in big endian
-ENDIAN=LITTLE	(regardless of any specification)	Assembles in little endian
(no specification)	.ENDIAN BIG	Assembles in big endian
	ENDIAN LITTLE	Assembles in little endian
	(no specification)	Assembles in big endian

Reference: .ENDIAN

 $\rightarrow$  Programmer's Guide, 4.2.6, "Object Module Assembler Directives," .ENDIAN

### 2.2.3 Assembly Listing Command Line Options

This assembler provides the following command line options concerned with the assemble listing.

-LIST -NOLIST	These command line options control output of an assemble listing.
-SOURCE -NOSOURCE	These command line options control output of a source program listing.
-CROSS_REFERENCE -NOCROSS_REFERENCE	These command line options control output of a cross-reference listing.
-SECTION -NOSECTION	These command line options control output of a section information listing.
-SHOW -NOSHOW	These command line options control output of the source program listing.
-LINES	This command line option sets the number of lines in the assemble listing.
-COLUMNS	This command line option sets the number of columns in the assemble listing.

#### -LIST

### -NOLIST Assemble Listing Output Control

### **Syntax**

```
-LIST [ =<listing output file> ]
-NOLIST
```

The abbreviated forms are indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- The -LIST option specifies output of an assemble listing.
   The -NOLIST option specifies no output of an assemble listing.
- 2. The listing output file specifies the output destination file for the assemble listing.
- 3. When the listing output file parameter is omitted, the assembler takes the following actions:
  - If the file format is omitted:
    - The file format lis is supplied. \*
  - If the specification is completely omitted:
     The file format lis is appended to the name of the input source file (the first specified source file). \*
- 4. Do not specify the same file for the input source file and the listing output file.

Note: When MS-DOS is used, the file format is in uppercase letters.

#### **CAUTION!**

Do not specify the same file for the input source file and the output object file. If the same file is specified, the contents of the input source file will be lost.

### **Relationship with Assembler Directives**

The assembler gives priority to specifications made with command line options.

<b>Command Line Option</b>	Assembler Directive	Result
-LIST	(regardless of any specification)	An assemble listing is output.
-NOLIST	(regardless of any specification)	An assemble listing is not output.
(no specification)	.PRINT LIST	An assemble listing is output.
	PRINT NOLIST	An assemble listing is not output.
	(no specification)	An assemble listing is not output.

#### -SOURCE

### -NOSOURCE Source Program Listing Output Control

### **Syntax**

- -SOURCE
- -NOSOURCE

The abbreviated forms are indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- The -SOURCE option specifies output of a source program listing to the assemble listing.
   The -NOSOURCE option specifies no output of a source program listing to the assemble listing.
- 2. The -SOURCE and -NOSOURCE options are only valid in cases where an assemble listing is being output.

References: Assemble listing output

- → Programmer's Guide, 4.2.7, "Assemble Listing Assembler Directives", .PRINT
- → User's Guide, 2.2.3, "Assemble Listing Command Line Options",
- -LIST -NOLIST

### **Relationship with Assembler Directives**

The assembler gives priority to specifications made with command line options.

Command Line Option	Assembler Directive	Result (When an Assemble Listing Is Output)
-SOURCE	(regardless of any specification)	A source program listing is output.
-NOSOURCE	(regardless of any specification)	A source program listing is not output.
(no specification)	.PRINT SRC	A source program listing is output.
	.PRINT NOSRC	A source program listing is not output.
	(no specification)	A source program listing is output.

### -CROSS\_REFERENCE

### -NOCROSS\_REFERENCE

### **Cross-Reference Listing Output Control**

### **Syntax**

- -CROSS\_REFERENCE
- -NOCROSS\_REFERENCE

The abbreviated forms are indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- 1. The -CROSS\_REFERENCE option specifies output of a cross-reference listing to the assemble listing.
  - The -NOCROSS\_REFERENCE option specifies no output of a cross-reference listing to the assemble listing.
- 2. The -CROSS\_REFERENCE and -NOCROSS\_REFERENCE options are only valid in cases where an assemble listing is being output.

References: Assemble listing output

- → Programmer's Guide, 4.2.7, "Assemble Listing Assembler Directives", .PRINT
- → User's Guide, 2.2.3, "Assemble Listing Command Line Options",
- -LIST -NOLIST

### **Relationship with Assembler Directives**

The assembler gives priority to specifications made with command line options.

Command Line Option	Assembler Directive	Result (When an Assemble Listing Is Output)
-CROSS_REFERENCE	(regardless of any specification)	A cross-reference listing is output.
-NOCROSS_REFERENCE	(regardless of any specification)	A cross-reference listing is not output.
(no specification)	.PRINT CREF	A cross-reference listing is output.
	.PRINT NOCREF	A cross-reference listing is not output.
	(no specification)	A cross-reference listing is output.

### -SECTION -NOSECTION Section Information Listing Output Control

### **Syntax**

- -SECTION
- -NOSECTION

The abbreviated forms are indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

1. The -SECTION option specifies output of a section information listing to the assemble listing.

The -NOSECTION option specifies no output of a section information listing to the assemble listing.

2. The -SECTION and -NOSECTION options are only valid in cases where an assemble listing is being output.

References: Assemble listing output

- → Programmer's Guide, 4.2.7, "Assemble Listing Assembler Directives", .PRINT
- → User's Guide, 2.2.3, "Assemble Listing Command Line Options",
- -LIST -NOLIST

### **Relationship with Assembler Directives**

The assembler gives priority to specifications made with command line options.

Command Line Option	Assembler Directive	Result (When an Assemble Listing Is Output)
-SECTION	(regardless of any specification)	A section information listing is output.
-NOSECTION	(regardless of any specification)	A section information listing is not output.
(no specification)	.PRINT SCT	A section information listing is output.
	.PRINT NOSCT	A section information listing is not output.
	(no specification)	A section information listing is output.

#### -SHOW

### -NOSHOW Source Program Listing Output Control

### **Syntax**

```
<UNIX>
-SHOW [= <output type>[,<output type> ...]]
-NOSHOW [= <output type>[,<output type> ...]]

<MS-DOS>
/SHOW [=(<output type>[,<output type> ...])]
/NOSHOW [=(<output type>[,<output type> ...])]
    When only one output type is specified, the parentheses can be omitted.

Output type: {CONDITIONALS|DEFINITIONS|CALLS|EXPANSIONS|CODE}
```

The abbreviated forms are indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- 1. The -SHOW option specifies output of preprocessor function source statements and object code lines in the source program listing.
  - The -NOSHOW option suppresses output of specified preprocessor function source statements and object code display lines in the source program listing.
- 2. The items specified by output types will be output or suppressed depending on the option. When no output type is specified, all items will be output or suppressed.

-SHOW: Output -NOSHOW: No output (suppress)

3. The following output types can be specified:

Output Type	Object	Description
CONDITIONALS	Failed condition	Condition-failed .AIF or .AIFDEF statements
DEFINITIONS	Definition	Macro definition parts, .AREPEAT and .AWHILE definition parts, .INCLUDE directive statements .ASSIGNA and .ASSSIGNC directive statements
CALLS	Call	Macro call statements, .AIF, .AIFDEF, and .AENDI directive statements
EXPANSIONS	Expansion	Macro expansion statements .AREPEAT and .AWHILE expansion statements
CODE	Object code lines	The object code lines exceeding the source statement lines

References: Source program listing output

- → Programmer's Guide, 4.2.7, "Assemble Listing Assembler Directives", .PRINT
- $\rightarrow$  User's Guide, 2.2.3, "Assemble Listing Command Line Options", -LIST -NOLIST SOURCE -NOSOURCE

### **Relationship with Assembler Directives**

The assembler gives priority to specifications made with command line options.

<b>Command Line Option</b>	Assembler Directive	Result	
-SHOW= <output type=""></output>	(regardless of any specification)	The object code is output.	
-NOSHOW= <output type=""></output>	(regardless of any specification)	The object code is not output.	
(no specification)	.LIST <output type=""> (output)</output>	The object code is output.	
	.LIST <output type=""> (suppress)</output>	The object code is not output.	
	(no specification)	The object code is output.	

### -LINES Setting of the Number of Lines in the Assemble Listing

### **Syntax**

-LINES=<line count>

The abbreviated form is indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- 1. The -LINES option sets the number of lines on a single page of the assemble listing. The range of valid values for the line count is from 20 to 255.
- 2. The -LINES option is only valid in cases where an assemble listing is being output.

References: Assemble listing output

- → Programmer's Guide, 4.2.7, "Assemble Listing Assembler Directives", .PRINT
- → User's Guide, 2.2.3, "Assemble Listing Command Line Options",
- -LIST -NOLIST

### **Relationship with Assembler Directives**

The assembler gives priority to specifications made with command line options.

<b>Command Line Option</b>	Assembler Directive	Result	
-LINES= <line count=""></line>	(regardless of any specification)	The number of lines on a page is given by -LINES.	
(no specification)	.FORM LIN= <line count=""></line>	The number of lines on a page is given by .FORM.	
	(no specification)	The number of lines on a page is 60 lines.	

### -COLUMNS Setting of the Number of Columns in the Assemble Listing

### **Syntax**

-COLUMNS=<column count>

The abbreviated form is indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- 1. The -COLUMNS option sets the number of columns in a single line of the assemble listing. The range of valid values for the column count is from 79 to 255.
- 2. The -COLUMNS option is only valid in cases where an assemble listing is being output. References: Assemble listing output
  - → Programmer's Guide, 4.2.7, "Assemble Listing Assembler Directives", .PRINT
  - → User's Guide, 2.2.3, "Assemble Listing Command Line Options",
  - -LIST -NOLIST

### **Relationship with Assembler Directives**

The assembler gives priority to specifications made with command line options.

<b>Command Line Option</b>	Assembler Directive	Result	
-COLUMNS= <column count=""></column>	(regardless of any specification)	The number of columns in a line is given by -COLUMNS.	
(no specification)	.FORM COL= <column count=""></column>	The number of columns in a line is given by .FORM.	
	(no specification)	The number of columns in a line is 132 columns.	

### 2.2.4 File Inclusion Function Command Line Option

This assembler provides the following command line option concerned with the file inclusion function.

**-INCLUDE** This command line option specifies the include file directory.

### -INCLUDE Include File Directory Specification

### **Syntax**

```
-INCLUDE=<directory name>[,<directory name....]
```

The abbreviated form is indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- 1. The -INCLUDE option specifies the include file directory.
- 2. The directory name depends on the naming rule of the host machine used.
- 3. As many directory name as can be input in one command line can be specified.
- 4. The current directory is searched, and then the directories specified by the -INCLUDE are searched in the specified order.

### **Relationship with Assembler Directives**

<b>Command Line Option</b>	Assembler Directive	Result
-INCLUDE	(regardless of any specification) (1) Directory specified .INCLUDE	
		(2) Directory specified by - INCLUDE*
(no specification)	.INCLUDE <file name=""></file>	Directory specified by .INCLUDE

Note: The directory specified by the -INCLUDE option is added before that specified by .INCLUDE.

#### Note

```
asmsh aaa.mar -include=/usr/tmp,/tmp (UNIX)
```

(.INCLUDE "file.h" is specified in aaa.mar.)

The current directory, /usr/tmp, and /tmp are searched for file.h in that order.

Reference: .INCLUDE

→ Programmer's Guide, 5, "File Inclusion Functionn"

### 2.2.5 Conditional Assembly Command Line Options

This assembler provides the following command line options concerned with conditonal assembly.

-ASSIGNA	This command line option defines integer preprocessor variable.
-ASSIGNC	This command line option defines character preprocessor variable.
-DEFINE	This command line option defines replacement character string.

### -ASSIGNA Integer Preprocessor Variable Definition

### **Syntax**

```
-ASSIGNA=reprocessor variable>=<integer constant>
[,preprocessor variable>=<integer constant>...]
```

The abbreviated form is indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- 1. The -ASSIGNA option sets an integer constant to a preprocessor variable.
- 2. The naming rule of preprocessor variables is the same as that of symbols.
- 3. An integer constant is specified by combining the radix (B', Q', D', or H') and a value. If the radix is omitted, the value is assumed to be decimal.
- 4. An integer constant must be within the range from -2,147,483,648 to 4,294,967,295. To specify a negative value, use a radix other than decimal.

#### **Relationship with Assembler Directives**

<b>Command Line Option</b>	Assembler Directive	Result
-ASSIGNA	.ASSIGNA*	Value specified by -ASSIGNA
	(no specification)	Value specified by -ASSIGNA
(no specification)	.ASSIGNA	Value specified by .ASSIGNA

Note: When a value is assigned to a preprocessor variable by the -ASSIGNA option, the definition of the preprocessor variable by .ASSIGNA is invalidated.

### Note

When the host machine uses UNIX as the OS, specify a backslash (\) before the apostrophe (') of the radix. If a preprocessor variable includes a dollar mark (\$), specify a backslash (\) before the dollar mark.

### Example:

```
asmsh aaa.mar -assigna=_\$=H\'FF (UNIX)
```

Value H'FF is assigned to preprocessor variable \_\$. All references (\&\_\$) to preprocessor variable \_\$ in the source program are set to H'FF.

Reference: .ASSIGNA

→ Programmer's Guide, 6.2, "Conditional Assembly Directive," .ASSIGNA

#### -ASSIGNC Character Preprocessor Variable Definition

### **Syntax**

```
-ASSIGNC=reprocessor variable>="<character string>"
[,processor variable>="<character string>"...]
```

The abbreviated form is indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- 1. The -ASSIGNC option sets a character string to a preprocessor variable.
- 2. The naming rule of preprocessor variables is the same as that of symbols.
- 3. A character string must be enclosed by double-quotation marks (").
- 4. Up to 255 characters (bytes) can be specified for a character string.

### **Relationship with Assembler Directives**

<b>Command Line Option</b>	<b>Assembler Directive</b>	Result
-ASSIGNC	.ASSIGNC directive*	Character string specified by -ASSIGNC
	(no specification)	Character string specified by -ASSIGNC
(no specification)	.ASSIGNC directive	Character string specified by .ASSIGNC

Note: When a character string is assigned to a preprocessor variable by the -ASSIGNC option, the definition of the preprocessor variable by .ASSIGNC is invalidated.

### Note

To specify the following characters in a character string when the host machine uses UNIX as the OS, specify a backslash (\) before the characters. To specify character strings before and after the following characters, enclose the character strings by double-quotation marks (").

- Exclamation mark (!)
- Double-quotation mark (")
- Dollar mark (\$)
- Back quotation mark (`)

```
asmsh aaa.mar -assignc=_\$="ON"\!"OFF" (UNIX)
```

Character string ON!OFF is assigned to preprocessor variable \_\$. All references (\&\_\$) to preprocessor variable \_\$ in the source program are set to ON!OFF.

Reference: .ASSIGNC

 $\rightarrow$  Programmer's Guide, 6.2, "Conditional Assembly Directive," .ASSIGNC

### -DEFINE Replacement Character String Definition

### **Syntax**

```
-DEFINE=<replacement symbol>="<character string>" [,<replacement symbol>="<character string>"...]
```

The abbreviated form is indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- 1. The -DEFINE option defines that the specified symbol is replaced with the corresponding character string by the preprocessor.
- 2. Differences between -DEFINE and -ASSIGNC are the same as those between .DEFINE and .ASSIGNC.

### **Relationship with Assembler Directives**

Command Line Option	Assembler Directive	Result
-DEFINE	.DEFINE directive*	Character string specified by -DEFINE
	(no specification)	Character string specified by -DEFINE
(no specification)	.DEFINE directive	Character string specified by .DEFINE

Note: When a character string is assigned to a replacement symbol by the -DEFINE option, the definition of the replacement symbol by .DEFINE is invalidated.

Reference: .DEFINE

→ Programmer's Guide, 6.2, "Conditional Assembly Directive," .DEFINE

### 2.2.6 Assembler Execution Command Line Option

This assembler provides the following command line options concerned with assembler execution.

-EXPAND	This command line option outputs preprocessor expansion result.
	This command line option changes the error level at which the assembler is abnormally terminated.

### -EXPAND Preprocessor Expansion Result Output

### **Syntax**

```
-EXPAND[=<output file name>]
```

The abbreviated form is indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- 1. The -EXPAND option outputs an assembler source file for which macro expansion, conditional assembly, and file inclusion have been performed.
- 2. When this option is specified, no object will be generated.
- 3. If no output file is specified, the file name becomes as follows:
  - When the file format (extension) is omitted: .exp is used.\*
  - When both the file name and file format (extension) is omitted:
    The input source file name specified first is used as the file name body and .exp is used as extension.\*
- 4. Do not specify the same file name for the input and output files.

Note: When MS-DOS is used, the file format is in uppercase letters.

### -ABORT Change of Error Level at Which the Assembler Is Abnormally Terminated

### **Syntax**

-ABORT=<error level>
Error level:{WARNING|ERROR}

The abbreviated form is indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- 1. The -ABORT option specifies the error level and changes the return value to the OS depending on the assembly result.
- 2. The return value to the OS is as follows:

Number of Cases		Return Value to OS when Option Specified				
			ABORT	=WARNING	ABOR	T=ERROR*
Warning	Error	Fatal Error	MS-DOS	UNIX	MS-DOS	UNIX
0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1 or more	0	0	2	1	0	0
_	1 or more	0	2	1	2	1
_	_	1 or more	4	1	4	1

Note: The underline indicates the default option setting.

- 3. When the return value to the OS becomes 1 or larger, the object module is not output.
- 4. The -ABORT option is valid only when the object module output is specified.

### 2.2.7 Japanese Character Description Command Line Options

This assembler provides the following command line options concerned with Japanese characters description in source files.

-sjis	This command line option interpretes Japanese kanji characters in source files as shift JIS code.
-EUC	This command line option interpretes Japanese kanji characters in source files as EUC code.
-OUTCODE	This command line option specifies the Japanese kanji code for output to object file.

### -SJIS Interpretation of Japanese Characters as Shift JIS Code

### **Syntax**

-SJIS

### **Description**

1. The -SJIS option enables Japanese characters to be written in character strings and comments.

SJIS Japanese characters in character strings and comments are interpreted as

shift JIS code.

No specification Japanese characters in character strings and comments are interpreted as

Japanese code specified by the host machine.

2. Do not specify this option together with the -EUC option.

Reference: Shift JIS code

→ Programmer's Guide, 1.4.2 "Character Constants"

### -EUC Interpretation of Japanese Characters as EUC Code

### **Syntax**

-EUC

### **Description**

1. The -EUC option enables Japanese characters to be written in character strings and comments.

EUC Japanese characters in character strings and comments are interpreted

EUC code.

No specification Japanese characters in character strings and comments are interpreted as

Japanese code specified by the host machine.

2. Do not specify this option together with the -SJIS option.

Reference: EUC code

→ Programmer's Guide, 1.4.2 "Character Constants"

### -OUTCODE Specification of Japanese Code for Output to Object File

### **Syntax**

```
-OUTCODE=<Japanese code>
<Japanese code>:{SJIS|EUC}
```

The abbreviated form is indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- 1. The -OUTCODE option converts Japanese characters in the source file to the specified Japanese kanji code for output to the object file.
- 2. The Japanese code output to the object file depends on the -OUTCODE specification and the code (-SJIS or -EUC) in the source file as follows:

### Japanese Code in Source File

-OUTCODE Specification	-SJIS	-EUC	No Specification
SJIS	Shift JIS code	Shift JIS code	Shift JIS code
EUC	EUC code	EUC code	EUC code
No specification	Shift JIS code	EUC code	Default code

Default code is as follows.

Host Machine	Default Code
SPARC station	EUC code
HP9000 700 series	Shift JIS code
RISC NEWS series	Shift JIS code
PC9800 series IBM PC and its compatible machine	Shift JIS code

Reference: Japanese code in the source file

- → User's Guide, 2.2.7 "Japanese Character Description Command Line Options" -SJIS
- $\rightarrow$  User's Guide, 2.2.7 "Japanese Character Description Command Line Options" -EUC

### 2.2.8 Automatic Literal Pool Generation Command Line Option

This assembler provides the following command line option concerned with automatic literal pool generation.

-AUTO\_LITERAL This command line option specifies the size mode for automatic literal pool generation.

### -AUTO\_LITERAL Size Mode Specification for Automatic Literal Pool Generation

### **Syntax**

-AUTO\_LITERAL

The abbreviated form is indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- 1. The -AUTO\_LITERAL option specifies the size mode for automatic literal pool generation.
  - When this command line option is specified, automatic literal pool generation is performed in size selection mode, and the assembler checks the imm value in the data move instruction without operation size specification (MOV #imm,Rn) and automatically generates a literal pool if necessary.
  - When this option is not specified, automatic literal pool generation is performed in size specification mode, and the data move instruction without size specification is handled as a 1-byte data move instruction.
- 2. In the size selection mode, the imm value in the data move instruction without operation size specification is handled as a signed value. Therefore, a value within the range from H'00000080 to H'000000FF (128 to 255) is regarded as word-size data.

	Selected Size or Error	
imm Value Range*	Size Selection Mode	Size Specification Mode
H'80000000 to H'FFFF7FFF (-2,147,483,648 to - 32,769)	Long word	Warning 835
H'FFFF8000 to H'FFFFFF7F (-32,768 to -129)	Word	Warning 835
H'FFFFF80 to H'0000007F (-128 to 127)	Byte	Byte
H'00000080 to H'000000FF (128 to 255)	Word	Byte
H'00000100 to H'00007FFF (256 to 32,767)	Word	Warning 835
H'00008000 to H'7FFFFFFF (32,768 to 2,147,483,647)	Long word	Warning 835

Note: The value in parentheses ( ) is in decimal.

Reference: Size selection mode

Size specification mode

→ Programmer's Guide, 8.3 "Size Mode for Automatic Literal Pool Generation"

### 2.2.9 Command Line Input Command Line Option

This assembler provides the following command line option concerned with command line input.

-SUBCOMMAND This command line option inputs command line specifications from a file.

### -SUBCOMMAND Command Line Specification Input from File

### **Syntax**

```
-SUBCOMMAND=<subcommand file name>
```

The abbreviated form is indicated by bold face.

### **Description**

- 1. The -SUBCOMMAND option inputs command line specifications from a file.
- 2. Specify input file names and command line options in the subcommand file in the same order as for normal command line specifications.
- 3. Only one input file name or one command line option can be specified in one line in the subcommand file.
- 4. This option must be specified at the end of a command line. The remaining files and options are read from the specified subcommand file.
- 5. This option must not be specified in a subcommand file.

Example:

```
asmsh aaa.src -subcommand=aaa.sub
```

The subcommand file contents are expanded to a command line and assembled.

```
-----aaa.sub contents
bbb.src
-list
-noobj
```

The above command line and file aaa.sub are expanded as follows:

```
asmsh aaa.src,bbb.src -list -noobj
```

### **Notes**

- 1. One line of a command file can include a maximum of 300 bytes.
- 2. One command file can include a maximum of 32,767 bytes.

# Appendix

# Appendix A Limitations and Notes on Programming

Table A-1 Limitations and Notes on Programming

Item	Limitation
Character types	ASCII characters, shift JIS code, EUC code
Upper/lower-case letter distinction	Symbols (including section names)) Distinguished Object module names)
	Reserved words} Executable instruction mnemonics} Assembler directive mnemonics} Operation sizes} Integer constant radixes}  Not distinguished
Line length	Up to 255 bytes
Program length (in lines)	Up to 65,535 lines
Character constants	Up to 4 characters
Symbol length	Up to 32 characters
Number of symbols	Up to 65,535 symbols
Number of import symbols	Up to 65,535 symbols
Number of export symbols	Up to 65,535 symbols
Section size	Up to H'FFFFFFF bytes
Number of sections	Up to 65,535 sections
Number of macro generation numbers	Up to 100,000 numbers
Number of literals	Up to 100,000 literals
	Character types  Upper/lower-case letter distinction  Line length Program length (in lines) Character constants Symbol length Number of symbols Number of import symbols Number of export symbols Section size Number of sections Number of macro generation numbers

# Appendix B Sample Program

This appendix presents a sample program written for this assembler.

# **B.1** Sample Program Specifications

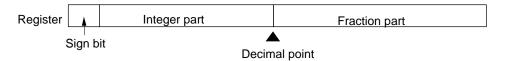
# **Functional Specification**

Macros and subroutines for addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division of fixed-point data in the following format:

 OP  
$$\rightarrow$$
 result
OP: +, -, ×, ÷

Note: Operation results are rounded off. Neither underflow nor overflow is checked.

#### **Data Format**



The location of the decimal point is set in preprocessor variable POINT as the number of bits from the MSB.

#### **Inputs and Outputs**

Inputs: Set parameter 1 in register Parm1.

Set parameter 2 in register Parm2.

For addition and subtraction, parameters 1 and 2 can be specified as macro

parameters.

Output: The result is stored in register Parm 1.

# Macro and Subroutine Usage

Addition (+): Macro call FIX\_ADD [parameter 1], [parameter 2] Subtraction (-): Macro call FIX\_SUB [parameter 1], [parameter 2]

Multiplication (×): Subroutine call FIX\_MUL Division(÷): Subroutine call FIX\_DIV

#### Registers to be Used

Define the following registers with the .REG directive: Parm1, Parm 2, WORK 1, WORK2, WORK3, WORK4

# **B.2** Coding Example

```
.MACRO FIX_ADD Rs=Parm2, Rd=Parm1
                 \Rs,\Rd
        ADD
        .ENDM
        .MACRO
                FIX_SUB Rs=Parm2,Rd=Parm1
        SUB
                 \Rs,\Rd
        .ENDM
FIX_MUL:
        DIV0S
                Parm1,Parm2
                                             ; Stores the sign of the result in WORK1.
        TVOM
                WORK1
        CMP/PZ Parm1
                                                 If (Parm1 < 0), Parm1 = -Parm1
        BT
                MUL01
        NEG
                Parm1,Parm1
                                             ;
        CMP/PZ Parm2
MUL01
                                             ;
                                                 If (Parm2 < 0), Parm2 = -Parm2
                MUL02
                                             ;
        BT
                Parm2,Parm2
        NEG
                                            ; Parm1 (low) * Parm2 (low)
MUL02
        MULU Parm1, Parm2
        SWAP.W Parm1, Parm1
        STS
                MACL, WORK 2
                                             ; Parm1 (high) * Parm2 (low)
        MULU
                Parm1,Parm2
        SWAP.W Parm1, Parm1
        SWAP.W Parm2,Parm2
        STS
                MACL, WORK3
                                             ; Parm1 (low) * Parm2 (high)
        MULU
                Parm1,Parm2
        SWAP.W Parm1, Parm1
        STS
                MACL, WORK4
        MULU
                Parm1,Parm2
                                             ; Parm1 (high) * Parm2( high)
        CLRT
        STS
                MACL,Parm1
        MOV
                WORK3,Parm2
                                             ;
        SHLR16 WORK3
                                             ;
        SHLL16 Parm2
                Parm2,WORK2
        ADDC
                                                 Sums 16-bit multiplication results.
                WORK3,Parm1
        ADDC
        MOV
                WORK4,Parm2
        SHLR16 WORK4
        SHLL16 Parm2
        ADDC
                WORK4,Parm1
                                             ;
        .AREPEAT \&POINT
                                             ;
        SHLL
                                             ;
                                                  Corrects decimal point location.
                Parm2
        ROTCL
                Parm1
        .AENDR
                                             ;
                WORK1
        SHLR
        BF
                MUL03
                                             ;
                                                  Adds the sign.
        NEG
                Parm1,Parm1
MUL03
        RTS
        NOP
```

(Continued on following page.)

```
FIX_DIV:
        MOV #0,WORK1
                                               If dividend is a negative value,
        DIV0S WORK1,Parm1
                                              converts to 1's complement.
        SUBC WORK1, Parm1
        .AREPEAT \&POINT
                                           ;
                                               Corrects decimal point location.
        SHAR
                Parm1
        ROTCR
               WORK1
        .AENDR
       DIVOS Parm2,Parm1
        .AREPEAT 32
                                               Parm1:WORK1/Parm2 → WORK1
        ROTCL WORK1
        DIV1 Parm2,Parm1
        .AENDR
        ROTCL WORK1
       MOV
               #0,Parm1
        ADDC
               Parm1,WORK1
                                               Converts to 2's complement.
        VOM
               WORK1,Parm1
        RTS
        NOP
```

# Appendix C Assemble Listing Output Example

The assemble listing shows the result of the assemble processing. The assemble listing consists of a source program listing, a cross-reference listing, and a section information listing.

This appendix describes the content and output format of the assemble listing using the assembly of the source program shown below as an example. This uses the sample program shown in appendix B to calculate the following:

```
1.5 \times 2.25 + 3 \div 5
```

```
.ASSIGNA 16
POINT
               (R0)
Parm1
        .REG
Parm2
        .REG
                (R1)
WORK1
        .REG
                (R2)
WORK2
        .REG
                (R3)
WORK3
        .REG
                 (R4)
WORK4
        .REG
                 (R5)
        .SECTION SAMPLE, CODE, ALIGN=4
        .INCLUDE "appendix B"
а
        .REG
                 (R8)
b
        .REG
                 (R9)
        .REG
                 (R10)
С
d
        .REG
                 (R11)
start
                PR,@-SP
        STS
               #H'00018000,a
        MOV.L
               #H'00024000,b
        MOV.L
               #H'00030000,c
        MOV.L
        MOV.L
                #H'00050000,d
        VOM
                a,Parm1
        VOM
                b,Parm2
                FIX_MUL
        BSR
        NOP
        VOM
                Parm1,a
        VOM
                c,Parm1
                d,Parm2
        VOM
                FIX_DIV
        BSR
        NOP
        FIX_ADD a
        VOM
                Parm1,a
                @SP+,PR
        LDS
        RTS
        NOP
        .END
```

# **C.1** Source Program Listing

The source program listing lists information related to the source statements, including the line number and the corresponding object code.

Figure C-1 shows an example of a source program listing.

```
*** SH SERIES ASSEMBLER Ver. 3.0 ***
                                                07/12/95 19:52:40
PROGRAM NAME =
                                                                                            (7)
                                                       "SAMPLE"
                                                        .HEADING """SAMPLE""
                                                        .ASSIGNA 16
    2
                                               POINT
                                                        .REG
    3
                                         3
                                               Parm1
                                                                (R0)
                                                        .REG
                                               Parm2
                                                                (R1)
    5
                                         5
                                               WORK1
                                                        .REG
                                                                (R2)
                                               WORK2
                                                        .REG
                                                                (R3)
                                               WORK3
                                                        .REG
                                                                (R4)
    8
                                               WORK4
                                                        .REG
                                                                (R5)
                                         9 I1 FIX_MUL:
   20
       0000000
   21
       00000000 2107
                                        10 I1
                                                       DIV0S
                                                                Parm1,Parm2
   22
       00000002 0229
                                        11 I1
                                                       MOVT
                                                                WORK1
       00000004 4011
                                        12 I1
                                                       CMP/PZ
                                                                Parm1
   24
       00000006 8900
                                        13 I1
                                                       BT
                                                                MUL01
                                                                                       if (Parm1
   25
       00000008 600B
                                        14 I1
                                                       NEG
                                                                Parm1,Parm1
                                        (4) (5)
  (1)
          (2)
                         (3)
                                                                 (6)
  237
                                               ***** BEGIN-POOL
       00000180 A008
                                               BRA TO END-POOL
  238
  239
       00000182 0009
                                               NOP
  240
       00000184 00018000
                                               DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 217
                                                                                       (8)
  241
       00000188 00024000
                                               DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 218
                                               DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 219
  242
       0000018C 00030000
                                               DATA FOR SOURCE-LINE 220
  243
       00000190 00050000
  244
                                                     END-POOL **
  245
                                        39
                                                        .END
  ****TOTAL ERRORS
                            0
  ****TOTAL WARNINGS
                            0
           (9)
```

Figure C-1 Source Program Listing Output Example

- (1) Line numbers (in decimal)
- (2) The value of the location counter (in hexadecimal)
- (3) The object code (in hexadecimal). The size of the reserved area in bytes is listed for areas reserved with the .RES, .SRES, .SRESC, and .SRESZ assembler directives.
- (4) Source line numbers (in decimal)
- (5) Expansion type. Whether the statement is expanded by file inclusion, conditional assembly function, or macro function is listed.
  - In: File inclusion (n indicates the nest level).
  - C: Satisfied conditional assembly, performed iterated expansion, or satisfied conditional iterated expansion

- M: Macro expansion
- (6) The source statements
- (7) The header setup with the .HEADING assembler directive.
- (8) The literal pool
- (9) The total number of errors and warnings. Error messages are listed on the line following the source statement that caused the error.

# **C.2** Cross-Reference Listing

The cross-reference listing lists information relating to symbols, including the attribute and the value.

Figure C-2 shows an example of a cross-reference listing.

*** SH SERIES ASSEMBLER Ver. 3.0	***	07/12	2/95 19:52:	40				
*** CROSS REFERENCE LIST								
NAME	SECTION	ATTR	VALUE		SEQUE	NCE		
FIX_DIV	SAMPLE		00000088	94*	229			
FIX_MUL	SAMPLE		00000000	20*	224			
MAN03		UDEF	00000000	89				
MUL01	SAMPLE		A000000A	24	26*			
MUL02	SAMPLE		00000010	27	29*			
Parm1		REG		3*	21	23	25	
				37	37	39	41	
				69	71	73	75	
				96	97	102	104	
				122	124	126	128	
				150	152	154	156	
				174	176	178	180	
				198	200	202	204	
Parm2		REG		4*	21	26	28	
				44	45	47	49	
				70	72	74	76	
				144	146	148	150	
				168	170	172	174	
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)				

Figure C-2 Cross-Reference Listing Output Example

- (1) The symbol name
- (2) The name of the section that includes the symbol (first eight characters)
- (3) The symbol attribute

EXPT	Export symbol
IMPT	Import symbol
SCT	Section name
REG	Symbol defined with the .REG assembler directive
ASGN	Symbol defined with the .ASSIGN assembler directive
EQU	Symbol defined with the .EQU assembler directive
MDEF	Symbol defined two or more times
UDEF	Undefined symbol
No symbol attribute (blank)	A symbol other than those listed above

(4) The value of symbol (in hexadecimal)

(5) The list line numbers (in decimal) of the source statements where the symbol is defined or referenced. The line number marked with an asterisk is the line where the symbol is defined.

# **C.3** Section Information Listing

The section information listing lists information related to the sections in a program, including the section type and section size.

Figure C-3 shows an example of a section information listing.

```
*** SH SERIES ASSEMBLER Ver. 3.0 *** 07/12/95 19:52:40

*** SECTION DATA LIST

SECTION ATTRIBUTE SIZE START

SAMPLE REL-CODE 000000194

(1) (2) (3) (4)
```

Figure C-3 Section Information Listing Output Example

- (1) The section name
- (2) The section type

REL	Relative address section
ABS	Absolute address section
CODE	Code section
DATA	Data section
COMMON	Common section
STACK	Stack section
DUMMY	Dummy section

- (3) The section size (in hexadecimal, byte units)
- (4) The start address of absolute address sections

# Appendix D Error Messages

# **D.1** Error Types

#### (1) Command Errors

These are errors related to the command line that starts the assembler. These errors can occur, for example, in cases where there are errors in the source file or command line option specifications.

The assembler outputs the error message to standard error output (usually the display).\*1 The format of these messages is as follows:\*2

```
" ", line <line number>:<error number> (E) <message>
```

### Example:

```
" ", line 0: 10(E) NO INPUT FILE SPECIFIED
```

Notes: 1. The assembler outputs the message to standard output when MS-DOS is used.

2. The format is as follows when MS-DOS is used:

```
(<line number>): <error number>(E)<message>
```

#### Example:

```
(0): 10(E) NO INPUT FILE SPECIFIED
```

# (2) Source Program Errors

These are syntax errors in the source program.

The assembler outputs the error message to standard output (usually the display) or the source program listing. (If a source program listing is output during assembly, these messages are not output to standard output.)\*1

The format of these messages is as follows:\*2

```
"<source file name>",line <line number>: <error number>(E)<message>
```

<sup>&</sup>quot;<source file name>",line <line number>: <error number>(W)<message>

### Example:

```
"PROG.SRC",line 25: 300(E) ILLEGAL MNEMONIC
"PROG.SRC",line 33: 811(W) ILLEGAL SYMBOL DEFINITION
```

Notes: 1. The assembler outputs the message to standard output or the source program listing when MS-DOS is used.

2. The format is as follows when MS-DOS is used:

PROG.SRC(33): 811(W) ILLEGAL SYMBOL DEFINITION

```
<source file name>(<line number>): <error number>(E)<message>
<source file name>(<line number>): <error number>(W)<message>

Example:
PROG.SRC(25): 300(E) ILLEGAL MNEMONIC
```

The source program error numbers are classified as follows:

100 to 199	General source program syntax errors
200 to 299	Errors in symbols
300 to 349	Errors in operations and/or operands
350 to 399	Errors in DSP instructions
400 to 499	Errors in expressions
500 to 599	Errors in assembler directives
600 to 699	Errors in file inclusion, conditional assembly, or macro function
700 to 799	Warnings in DSP instructions
800 to 999	General source program warnings

### (3) Fatal Errors

These are errors related to the assembler operating environment, and can occur, for example, if the available memory is insufficient.

The assembler outputs a message to standard error output.\*1 The format of these messages is as follows:\*2

" ", line <line number>:<error number> (F) <message>

# Example:

```
" ", line 0: 903(F) LISTING FILE OUTPUT ERROR
```

Notes: 1. The assembler outputs the message to standard output when MS-DOS is used.

2. The format is as follows when MS-DOS is used:

Assembly processing is interrupted when a fatal error occurs.

# **D.2** Error Message Tables

**Table D-1** Command Error Messages

10	Message: Meaning: Recovery procedure:	NO INPUT FILE SPECIFIED There is no input source file specified. Specify an input source file.
20	Message: Meaning: Recovery procedure:	CANNOT OPEN FILE <file name=""> The specified file cannot be opened. Check and correct the file name and directory.</file>
30	Message: Meaning: Recovery procedure:	INVALID COMMAND PARAMETER The command line options are not correct. Check and correct the command line options.
40	Message: Meaning: Recovery procedure:	CANNOT ALLOCATE MEMORY All available memory is used up during processing. This error only occurs when the amount of available user memory is extremely small. If there is other processing occurring at the same time as assembly, interrupt that processing and restart the assembler. If the error still occurs, check and correct the memory management employed on the host system.
50	Message: Meaning: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	COMPLETED FILE NAME TOO LONG <file name=""> The file name including the directory is too long. Shorten the total length of the file name and directory path. It is possible that the object module output by the assembler after this error has occurred will not be usable with the simulator/debugger.</file>

 Table D-2
 Source Program Error Messages

Gene	General Source Program Syntax Errors				
100	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	OPERATION TOO COMPLEX Too complex operation. Simplify the expression for the operation.			
101	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	SYNTAX ERROR IN SOURCE STATEMENT Syntax error in source statement. Check and correct the whole source statement.			
102	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	SYNTAX ERROR IN DIRECTIVE Syntax error in assembler directive source statement. Check and correct the whole source statement.			
104	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	LOCATION COUNTER OVERFLOW  The value of location counter exceeded its maximum value.  Reduce the size of the program.			
105	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL INSTRUCTION IN STACK SECTION  Executable instruction, extended instruction, or assembler directive that reserves data in stack section.  Remove the instruction, extended instruction, or directive in the stack section.			
106	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	TOO MANY ERRORS Error display terminated due to too many errors. Check and correct the whole source statement.			
108	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL CONTINUATION LINE Illegal continuation line. Check and correct continuation line.			
109	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	LINE NUMBER OVERFLOW  The number of lines being assembled exceeded 65,535 lines.  Subdivide the program into multiple files.			
150	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	INVALID DELAY SLOT INSTRUCTION Illegal executable instruction placed following delayed branch instruction in memory. Change the order of the instruction so that the instruction does not immediately follow a delayed branch instruction.			

 Table D-2
 Source Program Error Messages (cont)

ry procedure:	Place an executable instruction following the delayed branch
	instruction.
je: escription:	ILLEGAL BOUNDARY ALIGNMENT VALUE Illegal boundary alignment value specified for a section including extended instructions.
ry procedure:	Specify 2 or a larger multiple of 2 as a boundary alignment value.
je:	ILLEGAL ADDRESS  Executable or extended instruction placed at an odd address.  Place executable and extended instructions at even addresses.
•	scription:

Symb	ool Errors	
200	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	UNDEFINED SYMBOL REFERENCE Undefined symbol reference. Define the symbol.
201	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL SYMBOL OR SECTION NAME Reserved word specified as symbol (or section name). Correct the symbol or section name.
202	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL SYMBOL OR SECTION NAME Illegal symbol (or section name). Correct the symbol or section name.
203	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL LOCAL LABEL Illegal local label. Correct the local label.

Opera	ation and Operand Eri	rors
300	Message:	ILLEGAL MNEMONIC
	Error description:	Illegal operation.
	Recovery procedure:	Correct the operation.
301	Message:	TOO MANY OPERANDS OR ILLEGAL COMMENT
	Error description:	Too many operands of executable instruction, or illegal comment format.
	Recovery procedure:	Check and correct the operands and comment.
304	Message:	LACKING OPERANDS
	Error description:	Too few operands.
	Recovery procedure:	Correct the operands.

 Table D-2
 Source Program Error Messages (cont)

307	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL ADDRESSING MODE Illegal addressing mode in operand. Correct the operand.
308	Message: Error description:	SYNTAX ERROR IN OPERAND Syntax error in operand.
	Recovery procedure:	Correct the operand

DSP I	nstruction Errors	
350	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	SYNTAX ERROR IN SOURCE STATEMENT ( <mnemonic>) There are syntax error(s) in the DSP instruction statement. Correct the source statement.</mnemonic>
351	Message:  Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL COMBINATION OF MNEMONICS ( <mnemonic>, <mnemonic>) Illegal combination of DSP operation instructions is specified. Correct the combination of DSP operation instructions.</mnemonic></mnemonic>
352	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL CONDITION ( <mnemonic>) Illegal condition for DSP operation instructions is specified. Cancel the condition or change the DSP operation instruction.</mnemonic>
353	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL POSITION OF INSTRUCTION ( <mnemonic>) The DSP operation instruction is specified in an illegal position. Specify the DSP operation instruction in the correct position.</mnemonic>
354	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL ADDRESSING MODE ( <mnemonic>) The addressing mode of the DSP operation instruction is illegal. Correct the operand.</mnemonic>
355	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL REGISTER NAME ( <mnemonic>) The register name of the DSP operation instruction is illegal. Correct the register name.</mnemonic>
357	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL COMBINATION OF MNEMONICS ( <mnemonic>) An illegal data transfer instruction is specified. Correct the data transfer instruction.</mnemonic>
371	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL COMBINATION OF MNEMONICS ( <mnemonic>, <mnemonic>) The combination of data transfer instructions is illegal. Correct the combination of data transfer instructions.</mnemonic></mnemonic>

 Table D-2
 Source Program Error Messages (cont)

372	Message: Error description:	ILLEGAL ADDRESSING MODE ( <mnemonic>) An illegal addressing mode for the data transfer instruction operand is specified. Correct the operand.</mnemonic>
373	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL REGISTER NAME ( <mnemonic>) An illegal register name for the data transfer instruction is specified. Correct the register name.</mnemonic>

Expre	ession and Operation	Errors
400	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	CHARACTER CONSTANT TOO LONG Character constant is longer than 4 characters. Correct the character constant.
402	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL VALUE IN OPERAND Operand value out of range for this instruction. Change the value.
403	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL OPERATION FOR RELATIVE VALUE Attempt to perform multiplication, division, or logic operation on relative value. Correct the expression.
406	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL OPERAND An expression is specified at the location where floating-point data must be specified. Specify floating-point data.
407	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	MEMORY OVERFLOW Memory overflow during expression calculation. Simplify the expression.
408	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	DIVISION BY ZERO Attempt to divide by 0. Correct the expression.
409	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	REGISTER IN EXPRESSION Register name in expression. Correct the expression.
411	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	INVALID STARTOF/SIZEOF OPERAND STARTOF or SIZEOF specifies illegal section name. Correct the section name.

**Table D-2 Source Program Error Messages (cont)** 

Error description:

Recovery procedure: Correct the operand.

412	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL SYMBOL IN EXPRESSION Relative value specified as shift value. Correct the expression.
450	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL DISPLACEMENT VALUE Illegal displacement value. (Negative value is specified.) Correct the displacement value.
452	Message: Error description:	ILLEGAL DATA AREA ADDRESS PC-relative data move instruction specifies illegal address for data area.
	Recovery procedure:	Access a correct address according to the instruction operation size. (4-byte boundary for MOV.L and MOVA, and 2-byte boundary for MOV.W.)
453	Message: Error description:	LITERAL POOL OVERFLOW  More than 510 extended instructions exist that have not output literals.
	Recovery procedure:	Output literal pools using .POOL.
Asse	mbler Directive Errors	5
500	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	SYMBOL NOT FOUND Label not defined in directive that requires label. Insert a label.
501	Message: Error description:	ILLEGAL ADDRESS VALUE IN OPERAND Illegal specification of the start address or the value of location counter in section.
	Recovery procedure:	Correct the start address or value of location counter.
502	Message: Error description:	ILLEGAL SYMBOL IN OPERAND Illegal value (forward reference symbol, import symbol, or relative address symbol) specified in operand.
	Recovery procedure:	Correct the operand.
503	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	UNDEFINED EXPORT SYMBOL Symbol declared for export symbol not defined in the file. Define the symbol. Alternatively, remove the export symbol declaration.
504	Message:	INVALID RELATIVE SYMBOL IN OPERAND

Illegal value (forward reference symbol or import symbol) specified in operand.

**Table D-2 Source Program Error Messages (cont)** 

505	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL OPERAND Misspelled operand. Correct the operand.
506	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL OPERAND Illegal element specified in operand. Correct the operand.
508	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL VALUE IN OPERAND Operand value out of range for this directive. Correct the operand.
510	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL BOUNDARY VALUE Illegal boundary alignment value. Correct the boundary alignment value.
512	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL EXECUTION START ADDRESS Illegal execution start address. Correct the execution start address.
513	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL REGISTER NAME Illegal register name. Correct the register name.
514	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	INVALID EXPORT SYMBOL Symbol declared for export symbol that cannot be exported. Remove the declaration for the export symbol.
516	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	EXCLUSIVE DIRECTIVES Inconsistent directive specification. Check and correct all related directives.
517	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	INVALID VALUE IN OPERAND Illegal value (forward reference symbol, an import symbol, or relative-address symbol) specified in operand. Correct the operand.
518	Message: Error description:	INVALID IMPORT SYMBOL Symbol declared for import defined in the file. Remove the declaration for the import symbol.
520	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL .CPU DIRECTIVE POSITION CPU is not specified at the beginning of the program, or specified more than once. Specify .CPU at the beginning of the program once.

**Table D-2 Source Program Error Messages (cont)** 

Error description:

Recovery procedure: Correct the macro name.

521	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL .NOPOOL DIRECTIVE POSITION .NOPOOL placed at illegal position. Place .NOPOOL following a delayed branch instruction.
522	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL .POOL DIRECTIVE POSITION .POOL placed following a delayed branch instruction. Place an executable instruction following the delayed branch instruction.
523	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL OPERAND Illegal .LINE directive operand. Correct the operand.
525	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL .LINE DIRECTIVE POSITION LINE directive specified during macro expansion or conditional iterated expansion. Change the specified position of the .LINE directive.

#### File Inclusion, Conditional Assembly, and Macro Errors 600 Message: INVALID CHARACTER Error description: Illegal character. Recovery procedure: Correct it. INVALID DELIMITER 601 Message: Error description: Illegal delimiter character. Recovery procedure: Correct it. 602 Message: INVALID CHARACTER STRING FORMAT Error description: Character string error. Recovery procedure: Correct it. 603 SYNTAX ERROR IN SOURCE STATEMENT Message: Error description: Source statement syntax error. Recovery procedure: Reexamine the entire source statement. 604 ILLEGAL SYMBOL IN OPERAND Message: Illegal operand specified in a directive. Error description: Recovery procedure: No symbol or location counter (\$) can be specified as an operand of this directive. 610 Message: MULTIPLE MACRO NAMES

Macro name reused in macro definition (.MACRO directive).

 Table D-2
 Source Program Error Messages (cont)

611	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	MACRO NAME NOT FOUND Macro name not specified (.MACRO directive). Specify a macro name in the name field of the .MACRO directive.
612	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL MACRO NAME Macro name error (.MACRO directive). Correct the macro name.
613	Message: Error description:  Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL .MACRO DIRECTIVE POSITION .MACRO directive appears in macro body (between .MACRO and .ENDM directives), between .AREPEAT and .AENDR directives, or between .AWHILE and .AENDW directives. Remove the .MACRO directive.
614	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	MULTIPLE MACRO PARAMETERS Identical formal parameters repeated in formal parameter declaration in macro definition (.MACRO directive). Correct the formal parameters.
615	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL .END DIRECTIVE POSITION .END directive appears in macro body (between .MACRO and .ENDM directives). Remove the .END directive.
616	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	MACRO DIRECTIVES MISMATCH An .ENDM directive appears without a preceding .MACRO directive, or an .EXITM directive appears outside of a macro body (between .MACRO and .ENDM directives), outside of .AREPEAT and .AENDR directives, or outside of .AWHILE and .AENDW directives.  Remove the .ENDM or .EXITM directive.
618	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	MACRO EXPANSION TOO LONG Line with over 255 characters generated by macro expansion. Correct the definition or call so that the line is less than or equal to 255 characters.
619	Message: Error description:  Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL MACRO PARAMETER  Macro parameter name error in macro call, or error in formal parameter in a macro body (between .MACRO and .ENDM directives).  Correct the formal parameter.
	Supplement:	When there is an error in a formal parameter in a macro body, the error will be detected and flagged during macro expansion.

 Table D-2
 Source Program Error Messages (cont)

620	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	UNDEFINED PREPROCESSOR VARIABLE Reference to an undefined preprocessor variable. Define the preprocessor variable.
621	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL .END DIRECTIVE POSITION .END directive in macro expansion. Remove the .END directive.
622	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	')' NOT FOUND  Matching parenthesis missing in macro processing exclusion.  Add the missing macro processing exclusion parenthesis.
623	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	SYNTAX ERROR IN STRING FUNCTION Syntax error in character string manipulation function. Correct the character string manipulation function.
624	Message: Error description:	MACRO PARAMETERS MISMATCH Too many macro parameters for positional specification in macro call.
	Recovery procedure:	Correct the number of macro parameters.
631	Message: Error description:	END DIRECTIVE MISMATCH Terminating preprocessor directive does not agree with matching directive.
	Recovery procedure:	Reexamine the preprocessor directives.
640	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	SYNTAX ERROR IN OPERAND Syntax error in conditional assembly directive operand. Reexamine the entire source statement.
641	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	INVALID RELATIONAL OPERATOR Error in conditional assembly directive relational operator. Correct the relational operator.
642	Message: Error description:	ILLEGAL .END DIRECTIVE POSITION .END directive appears between .AREPEAT and .AENDR directives or between .AWHILE and .AENDW directives.
	Recovery procedure:	Remove the .END directive.
643	Message: Error description:	DIRECTIVE MISMATCH .AENDR or .AENDW directive does not form a proper pair with .AREPEAT or .AWHILE directive.
	Recovery procedure:	Re-examine the preprocessor directives.

 Table D-2
 Source Program Error Messages (cont)

Message: Error description:	ILLEGAL .AENDW OR .AENDR DIRECTIVE POSITION .AENDW or .AENDR directive appears between .AIF and .AENDI directives.
Recovery procedure:	Remove the .AENDW or .AENDR directive.
Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	EXPANSION TOO LONG Line with over 255 characters generated by .AREPEAT or .AWHILE expansion. Correct the .AREPEAT or .AWHILE to generate lines of less than or
Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	equal to 255 characters.  INVALID INCLUDE FILE Error in .INCLUDE file name. Correct the file name.
Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	CANNOT OPEN INCLUDE FILE Could not open .INCLUDE file. Correct the file name.
Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	INCLUDE NEST TOO DEEP File inclusion nesting exceeded 30 levels. Limit the nesting to 30 or fewer levels.
Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	SYNTAX ERROR IN OPERAND Syntax error in .INCLUDE operand. Correct the operand.
Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	.ENDM NOT FOUND Missing .ENDM directive following .MACRO. Insert an .ENDM directive.
Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL .END DIRECTIVE POSITION .END directive appears between .AIF and .AENDI directives. Remove the .END directive.
Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL .END DIRECTIVE POSITION .END directive appears in included file. Remove the .END directive.
Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL .END DIRECTIVE POSITION .END directive appears between .AIF and .AENDI directives. Remove the .END directive.
	Error description: Recovery procedure: Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:

 Table D-2
 Source Program Error Messages (cont)

665	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	EXPANSION TOO LONG Lines with over 255 characters are generated by the .DEFINE directive. Correct the .DEFINE directive to generate lines of less than or equal to 255 characters.
667	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	SUCCESSFUL CONDITION .AERROR Statement including the .AERROR directive was processed in the .AIF condition. Correct the conditional statement so that the .AERROR directive is not processed.
668	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL VALUE IN OPERAND Error in the operand of the directive. Specify, as the operand of this directive, a symbol defined by .DEFINE directive.

**Table D-3** Source Program Warning Messages

DSP I	nstruction Warnings	
700	Message: Error description:	ILLEGAL VALUE IN OPERAND ( <mnemonic>) The operand value of the DSP operation instruction exceeds the specifiable range.</mnemonic>
	Recovery procedure:	Correct the operand value within the specifiable range.
701	Message:	MULTIPLE REGISTER IN DESTINATION ( <mnemonic>, <mnemonic>)</mnemonic></mnemonic>
	Error description:	The same register is specified as multiple destination operands of the DSP instruction.
	Recovery procedure:	Specify the register correctly.
702	Message: Error description:	ILLEGAL OPERATION SIZE ( <mnemonic>) The operation size of the DSP operation instruction or the data transfer instruction is illegal.</mnemonic>
	Recovery procedure:	Cancel or correct the operation size.
703	Message: Error description:	MULTIPLE REGISTER IN DESTINATION ( <mnemonic>, <mnemonic>) The same register is specified as the destination registers of the DSP operation instruction and data transfer instruction.</mnemonic></mnemonic>
	Recovery procedure:	Specify the register correctly.
Gene	ral Source Program W	/arnings
800	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	SYMBOL NAME TOO LONG A symbol exceeded 251 characters. Correct the symbol. The assembler ignores the characters starting at the 252nd character.
801	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	MULTIPLE SYMBOLS Symbol already defined. Remove the symbol redefinition. The assembler ignores the second and later definitions.

ILLEGAL OPERATION SIZE

The assembler ignores the incorrect operation size specification.

Illegal operation size.

Recovery procedure: Correct the operation size.

304 HITACHI

807

Message:

Supplement:

Error description:

 Table D-3
 Source Program Warning Messages (cont)

808	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	ILLEGAL CONSTANT SIZE Illegal notation of integer constant. Correct the notation. The assembler may misinterpret the integer constant, i.e., interpret it as a value not intended by the programmer.
810	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	TOO MANY OPERANDS Too many operands or illegal comment format. Correct the operand or the comment. The assembler ignores the extra operands.
811	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	ILLEGAL SYMBOL DEFINITION Specified label in assembler directive that cannot have a label. Remove the label specification. The assembler ignores the label.
813	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	SECTION ATTRIBUTE MISMATCH A different section type is specified on section restart (reentry), or, a section start address is respecified at the restart of absolute section. Do not respecify the section type or start address on section reentry. The specification of starting section remains valid.
815	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	MULTIPLE MODULE NAMES Respecification of object module name. Specify the object module name once in a program. The assembler ignores the second and later object module name specifications.
816	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	ILLEGAL DATA AREA ADDRESS Illegal allocation of data or data area. Locate the word data or data area on the even address. Locate the long word data or data area on an address of a multiple of 4. The assembler corrects the location of the data or data area according to the size of it.
817	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	ILLEGAL BOUNDARY VALUE A boundary alignment value less than 4 specified for a code section. The specification is valid, but if an executable instruction or extended instruction is located at an odd address, error 153 occurs. Special care must be taken when specifying 1 for code section boundary alignment value.

 Table D-3
 Source Program Warning Messages (cont)

825	Message: Error description:	ILLEGAL INSTRUCTION IN DUMMY SECTION  Executable instruction, extended instruction, or assembler directive that reserves data or data area in dummy section.
	Recovery procedure: Supplement:	Remove the instruction or directive.  The assembler ignores the instruction or directive.
826	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	ILLEGAL PRECISION The floating-point constant is not in single precision (.S). Specify single precision. The assembler assumes single precision.
832	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	MULTIPLE 'P' DEFINITIONS Symbol P already defined before a default section is used. Do not define P as a symbol if a default section is used. The assembler regards P as the name of the default section, and ignores other definitions of the symbol P.
835	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	ILLEGAL VALUE IN OPERAND Operand value out of range for this instruction. Correct the value. The assembler generates object code with a value corrected to be within range.
836	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	ILLEGAL CONSTANT SIZE Illegal notation of integer constant. Correct the notation. The assembler may misinterpret the integer constant, i.e., interpret it as a value not intended by the programmer.
837	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	SOURCE STATEMENT TOO LONG  The length of a source statement exceeded 255 bytes.  Rewrite the source statement to be within 255 bytes by, for example, rewriting the comment. Alternatively, rewrite the statement as a multi-line statement.  The assembler ignores byte number 256, and regards the
	Сарріотісти.	characters starting at byte 257 as the next statement.
838	Message: Error description:	ILLEGAL CHARACTER CODE The shift JIS code or EUC code is specified outside character strings and comments, or the SJIS or EUC command line option is not specified.
	Recovery procedure:	Specify the shift JIS code or EUC code in character strings or comments. Specify the SJIS or EUC command line option.

 Table D-3
 Source Program Warning Messages (cont)

839	Message: Error description:	ILLEGAL FIGURE IN OPERAND Fixed-point data having six or more digits is specified in word size, or that having 11 or more digits is specified in long-word size. Reduce the digits to the limit.
840	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	OPERAND OVERFLOW Floating-point data overflows.
841	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure: Supplement:	OPERAND UNDERFLOW Floating-point data underflows. Modify the value. The assembler assumes +0 when the value is negative and -0 when negative.
850	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ILLEGAL SYMBOL DEFINITION Symbol specified in label field. Remove the symbol.
851	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	MACRO SERIAL NUMBER OVERFLOW Macro generation counter exceeded 99999. Reduce the number of macro calls.
852	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	UNNECESSARY CHARACTER Characters appear after the operands. Correct the operand(s).
854	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	.AWHILE ABORTED BY .ALIMIT Expansion count has reached the maximum value specified by .ALIMIT directive, and expansion has been terminated. Check the condition for iterated expansion.

 Table D-3
 Source Program Warning Messages (cont)

870	Message: Error description:	ILLEGAL DISPLACEMENT VALUE Illegal displacement value.	
operation size is word, or the displacement of 4 when the operation size is long word.)  Recovery procedure:  Take account of the fact that the assembler displacement value.		Take account of the fact that the assembler corrects the displacement value.  The assembler generates object code with the displacement	
		(For a word size operation the assembler discards the low order bit of the displacement to create an even number, and for a long word size operation the assembler discards the two low order bits of the displacement to create a multiple of 4.)	
871	Message: Error description:	PC RELATIVE IN DELAY SLOT Executable instruction with PC relative addressing mode operand is located following delayed branch instruction.	
	Recovery procedure:	Take account of the fact that the value of PC is changed by a delayed branch instruction.	
	Supplement:	The assembler generates object code exactly as specified in the program.	
874	Message: Error description:	CANNOT CHECK DATA AREA BOUNDARY Cannot check data area boundary for PC-relative data move instructions.	
	Recovery procedure: Supplement:	Note carefully the data area boundary at linkage process. The assembler only outputs this message when a data move instruction is included in a relative section, or when an import symbol is used to indicate a data area.	
875	Message: Error description:	CANNOT CHECK DISPLACEMENT SIZE Cannot check displacement size for PC-relative data move instructions.	
	Recovery procedure:	Note carefully the distance between data move instructions and data area at linkage.	
	Supplement:	The assembler only outputs this message when a data move instruction is included in a relative section, or when an import symbol is used to indicate a data area.	

 Table D-3
 Source Program Warning Messages (cont)

876	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	ASSEMBLER OUTPUTS BRA INSTRUCTION The assembler automatically outputs a BRA instruction. Specify a literal pool output position using .POOL, or check that the program to which a BRA instruction is added can run normally.	
	Supplement:	When a literal pool output location is not available, the assembler automatically outputs literal pool and a BRA instruction to jump over the literal pool.	
880	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	END NOT FOUND No .END in the program. Add an .END.	

**Table D-4** Fatal Error Messages

901	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	SOURCE FILE INPUT ERROR Source file input error. Check the hard disk for adequate free space. Create the required free space by deleting unnecessary files.	
902	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	MEMORY OVERFLOW Insufficient memory. (Unable to process the temporary information.) : Subdivide the program.	
903	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	LISTING FILE OUTPUT ERROR Output error on the list file. Check the hard disk for adequate free space. Create the required free space by deleting unnecessary files.	
904	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	OBJECT FILE OUTPUT ERROR Output error on the object file. Check the hard disk for adequate free space. Create the required free space by deleting unnecessary files.	
905	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	MEMORY OVERFLOW Insufficient memory. (Unable to process the line information.) Subdivide the program.	
906	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	MEMORY OVERFLOW Insufficient memory. (Unable to process the symbol information.) Subdivide the program.	
907	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	MEMORY OVERFLOW Insufficient memory. (Unable to process the section information.) Subdivide the program.	
908	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	SECTION OVERFLOW The number of sections exceeded 65,535. Subdivide the program.	
909	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	SYMBOL OVERFLOW The number of symbols exceeded 65,535. Subdivide the program.	
910	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	SOURCE LINE NUMBER OVERFLOW The number of source program lines exceeded 65,535.  Subdivide the program.	

**Table D-4** Fatal Error Messages (cont)

911	Message:	IMPORT SYMBOL OVERFLOW	
511	Error description:	The number of import symbols exceeded 65,535. Reduce the number of import symbols.	
	-		
912	Message:	EXPORT SYMBOL OVERFLOW	
	Error description:	The number of export symbols exceeded 65,535.	
	Recovery procedure:	Reduce the number of export symbols.	
933	Message:	ILLEGAL ENVIRONMENT VARIABLE	
	Error description:	The specified target CPU is incorrect.	
	Recovery procedure:	Correct the target CPU.	
935	Message:	SUBCOMMAND FILE INPUT ERROR	
	Error description:	Subcommand file input error.	
	Recovery procedure:	Check the hard disk for adequate free space. Create the required	
		free space by deleting unnucessary files.	
950	Message:	MEMORY OVERFLOW	
	Error description:	Insufficient memory.	
	Recovery procedure:	Separate the source program.	
951	Message:	LITERAL POOL OVERFLOW	
	Error description:	More than 100,000 internal symbols are used for literal pools.	
	Recovery procedure:	Separate the source program.	
952	Message:	LITERAL POOL OVERFLOW	
	Error description:	Literal pool capacity overflow.	
	Recovery procedure:	Insert unconditional branch before overflow.	
953	Message:	MEMORY OVERFLOW	
	Error description:	Insufficient memory.	
	Recovery procedure:	Separate the source program.	
954	Message:	LOCAL BLOCK NUMBER OVERFLOW	
	Error description:	The number of local blocks that are valid in the local label exceeded	
	_	100,000.	
	Recovery procedure:	Separate the source program.	
956	Message:	EXPAND FILE INPUT/OUTPUT ERROR	
	Error description:	File output error for preprocessor expansion.	
	Recovery procedure:		
		free space by deleting unnecessary files.	

**Table D-4** Fatal Error Messages (cont)

957	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	MEMORY OVERFLOW Insufficient memory. Separate the source program.
958	Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:	MEMORY OVERFLOW Insufficient memory. Separate the source program.

# Appendix E Differences from Former Version

The differences between this new version (SH-series cross assembler v.3.0) and the former version (SH-series cross assembler v.2.0) are described below.

#### E.1 CPU

This version includes assembly functions for the SH-DSP and SH3E in addition to the SH1, SH2, and SH3, and the following items are added or changed.

- Reserved words
- Executable instructions
- .CPU assembler directive
- CPU command line option
- SH-DSP instructions

The target CPU is specified by the CPU command line option or .CPU directive in the former version, but in the new version, it can also be specified by the SHCPU environment variable.

The SHCPU environment variable value specification is the same as that for the C compiler or the simulator debugger, and therefore this value can be referenced in common by these tools.

When the target CPU is specified several times by -CPU, .CPU, and SHCPU, the target CPU is selected based on the following priorities:

Priority 1: -CPU specification Priority 2: .CPU specification Priority 3: SHCPU specification

### **References:**

Reserved words

→ Programmer's Guide, 1.2, "Reserved Words"

Executable instructions

→ Programmer's Guide, 3, "Executable Instructions"

.CPU assembler directive

- → Programmer's Guide, 4.2.1, "Assembler Directive Related to CPU"
- -CPU command line option
  - → User's Guide, 2.2.1, "CPU Command Line Option"

SH-DSP instructions

→ Programmer's Guide, 9, "SH-DSP Instructions"

SHCPU environment variable

→ User's Guide, 1.3, "SHCPU Environment Variable"

## E.2 Constants

In the new version, fixed-point constants and floating-point constants can be used in addition to integer constants and character constants.

- Fixed-point constants are used in the SH-DSP.
- Floating-point constants are used in the SH3E.

#### **References:**

Fixed-point constants

→ Programmer's Guide, 1.4.4, "Fixed-Point Constants"

Floating-point constants

→ Programmer's Guide, 1.4.3, "Floating-Point Constants"

## **E.3** Added Assembler Directives

Table E-1 lists the assembler directives and assembler statements added to the new version.

Table E-1 Added Assembler Directives and Statements

Assembler Directive or Statement	Function	Reference in Programmer's Guide
.FREG	Alias for floating-point register	4.2.3
.FDATA	Floating-point constant reservation	4.2.4
.FDATAB	Floating-point constant block reservation	4.2.4
.XDATA	Fixed-point constant reservation	4.2.4
.AIFDEF	Conditional assembly with definition	6.2

## **E.4** Automatic Literal Pool Generation

The new version includes the size selection mode, in which the assembler checks the imm value of th data move instruction without operation size (MOV #imm,Rn) and automatically generates a literal pool if necessary.

#### **References:**

Size selection mode

- $\,\rightarrow\,$  Programmer's Guide, 8.3, "Size Mode for Automatic Literal Pool Generation"
- → User's Guide, 2.2.8, "Command Line Option Related to Automatic Literal Pool Generation"

## **E.5** Added Command Line Option

Table E-2 lists the command line option added to the new version.

Table E-2 Added Command Line Option

Command Line Option	Function	Reference
OUTCODE	Output Japanese code selection	User's Guide, 2.2.7
AUTO_LITERAL	Size mode selection	User's Guide, 2.2.8

#### **References:**

Size mode

- → Programmer's Guide, 8.3, "Size Mode for Automatic Literal Pool Generation"
- → User's Guide, 2.2.8, "Command Line Option Related to Automatic Literal Pool Generation"

## **E.6** Tag File Output

If an error or a warning occurs at assembly, the former version outputs a tag file, but the new version does not. To create a tag file, output the error or warning information to a file using the redirection function.

#### Example

```
asmsh test.src >& test.tag (UNIX)
asmsh test.src > test.tag (MS-DOS)

Error and warning information is output to test.tag.
```

# Appendix F ASCII Code Table

Table F-1 ASCII Code Table

## **Upper 4 Bits**

				٠	per + Dit	3		
Lower 4 Bits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
0	NUL	DLE	SP	0	@	Р	`	р
1	SOH	DC1	!	1	А	Q	а	q
2	STX	DC2	"	2	В	R	b	r
3	ETX	DC3	#	3	С	S	С	S
4	EOT	DC4	\$	4	D	Т	d	t
5	ENQ	NAK	%	5	Е	U	е	u
6	ACK	SYN	&	6	F	V	f	V
7	BEL	ETB	4	7	G	W	g	W
8	BS	CAN	(	8	Н	Х	h	Х
9	HT	EM	)	9	I	Υ	i	у
A	LF	SUB	*	:	J	Z	j	Z
В	VT	ESC	+	;	K	[	k	{
С	FF	FS	,	<	L	\	I	
D	CR	GS	-	=	М	]	m	}
E	SO	RS		>	N	^	n	~
F	SI	US	/	?	0	_	0	DEL

# Supplement

## Supplement 1 Extended Instruction REPEAT for SH-DSP

The REPEAT extended instruction makes the assembler to automatically generate the SH-DSP loop control instructions (LDRS, LDRE, and SETRC).

The values set in the RS and RE registers depend on the number of instructions to be repeated. The REPEAT extended instruction automatically calculates the values to be set in the RS and RE registers according to the number of the instructions to be repeated, and generates the LDRS and LDRE instructions using the calculated values.

Reference: Values to be set in the RS and RE registers

→ Programmer's Guide, 9.3, Notes on Executable Instructions

## 1.1 REPEAT Description

#### **Syntax**

[<symbol>[:]] \( \text{REPEAT} \( \text{cart address} \), \( \text{end address} \) [, \( \text{repeat count} \) ]

#### **Statement Elements**

1. Start and end addresses

Enter the labels of the start and end addresses of the repeat loop.

2. Repeat count

Enter the repeat count in immediate value or general register name.

#### **Description**

- 1. REPEAT automatically generates DSP instructions LDRS and LDRE to repeat the instructions in the range from the start address to the end address.
- 2. When the repeat count is specified, REPEAT generates a SETRC instruction. When the repeat count is omitted, SETRC is not generated.

## 1.2 Coding Examples

### To Repeat Four or More Instructions (Basic Example):

REPEAT RptStart,RptEnd,#5
PCLR Y0
PCLR A0

RptStart: MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0

1 DCT PCLR A0
AND R0,R4

RptEnd: AND R0,R6

This program repeats execution of five instructions from RptStart to RptEnd five times.

The expanded results are as follows:

LDRS RptStart

LDRS RptEnd3+4

SETRC #5

PCLR Y0

PCLR A0

RptStart: MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1

RptEnd3: PADD A0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0 ; The label is not generated actually.

DCT PCLR A0

AND R0,R4

RptEnd: AND R0,R6

**To Repeat One Instruction:** Specify the same label as the start and end addresses.

```
REPEAT Rpt,Rpt,R0

MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6,Y1

Rpt: PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0 MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
```

The expanded results are as follows:

LDRS RptStart0+8
LDRE RptStart0+4
SETRC R0

RptStart0: MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6,Y1 ; The label is not generated actually.

Rpt: PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0 MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1

#### **To Repeat Two Instructions:**

REPEAT RptStart,RptEnd,#10

PCLR Y0

RptStart: MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
RptEnd: PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0

The expanded results are as follows:

LDRS RptStart0+6
LDRE RptStart0+4

SETRC #10

RptStart0: PCLR YO ; The label is not generated actually.

RptStart: MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
RptEnd: PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0

#### **To Repeat Three Instructions:**

REPEAT RptStart,RptEnd,R0

PCLR Y0

RptStart: MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1

PMULS X1,Y1,A0

RptEnd: PADD A0,Y0,Y0

The expanded results are as follows:

LDRE RptStart0+4
LDRS RptStart0+4

SETRC R0

RptStart0: PCLR Y0 ; The label is not generated actually.

RptStart: MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1

PMULS X1,Y1,A0

RptEnd: PADD A0,Y0,Y0

**To Omit Repeat Count:** When the repeat count is omitted, the assembler does not generate SETRC. To separate the LDRS and LDRE from the SETRC, omit the repeat count.

```
REPEAT RptStart,RptEnd

; The LDRS and LDRE are expanded here.

MOV #10,R0

OuterLoop:

SETRC 16
PCLR Y0
PCLR A0

RptStart: MOVX @R4+,X1 MOVY @R6+,Y1
PADD A0,Y0,Y0 PMULS X1,Y1,A0
DCT PCLR A0
AND R0,R4

RptEnd: AND R0,R6
DT R0
BF OuterLoop
```

#### 1.3 Notes on Extended Instruction REPEAT

**Start and End Addresses:** Only the labels in the same section or the local labels in the same local block can be specified as the start and end addresses.

The start address must be after (at a higher address than) the REPEAT extended instruction. The end address must be after (at a higher address than) the start address.

Reference: Local labels

→ Programmer's Guide, 1.8, Local Label

#### **Instructions Inside Loops:**

• If one of the following assembler directives that reserve a data item or a data area or an .ORG directive is used inside a loop, the assembler outputs a warning message and counts the directive as one of the instructions to be repeated. If an .ALIGN directive is used inside a loop to adjust the boundary alignment, the assembler outputs a warning message and counts the directive as one of the instructions to be repeated.

Directives generating a warning inside loops: .DATA, .DATAB, .SDATA, .SDATAB, .SDATAC, .SDATAZ, .FDATA, .FDATAB, .XDATA, .RES, .SRESC, .SRESC, .SRESZ, .FRES, .ALIGN, and .ORG

• The assembler stops automatic generation of literal pools within a loop. Therefore, even when an unconditional branch is used in a loop, no literal pool is generated. If a .POOL

directive is used in a loop, the assembler outputs a warning message and ignores the .POOL directive.

**Instruction Immediately before Loop:** If three or less instructions are to be repeated, the instruction immediately before the loop must be an executable instruction or a DSP instruction. Therefore, when three or less instructions are to be repeated and if one of the following is located immediately before the start address of the loop, the assembler outputs a warning message.

- Assembler directive that reserves a data item or a data area, or .ORG directive
   .DATA, .DATAB, .SDATA, .SDATAB, .SDATAC, .SDATAZ, .FDATA, .FDATAB, .XDATA, .RES, .SRES, .SRESC, .SRESZ, .FRES, or .ORG
- Literal pool generated by the automatic literal pool output function
   If an unconditional branch instruction and a delay slot instruction are located immediately before a loop, or if a .POOL directive is located immediately before a loop, a literal pool may be automatically generated. To stop literal pool generation before a loop, use a .NOPOOL directive immediately after the delay slot instruction.
- One alignment byte generated by an .ALIGN Directive
- When an .ALIGN directive is used immediately after an odd address before a loop, one alignment byte may be generated (for example, .ALIGN 4 is specified when the location counter value is 3). In this case, the contents of the byte before a loop is not an executable instruction, and an error message is output. If two or more alignment bytes are generated before a loop, their contents is a NOP instruction and the program can be correctly executed.

#### Others:

- One or more executable or DSP instructions must be located between a REPEAT extended instruction and the start address. Otherwise, the assembler outputs an error message.
- No REPEAT extended instruction must be located between a REPEAT extended instruction
  and the end address. If REPEAT extended instructions are nested, the assembler outputs an
  error message, the first REPEAT is valid, and the other REPEAT instructions are ignored.

## Supplement 2 Error Messages Related to REPEAT

Tables 2-1 and 2-2 show the error messages and the warning message related to REPEAT, respectively.

**Table 2-1** Error Messages Related to REPEAT

160	Message: Error description:	REPEAT LOOP NESTING Another REPEAT is located between a REPEAT and the end address
	Recovery procedure:	Correct the REPEAT location.
161	Message: Error description:	ILLEGAL START ADDRESS FOR REPEAT LOOP  No executable or DSP instructions are located between a REPEAT and start address.
	Recovery procedure:	Use one or more executable or DSP instructions between the REPEAT and start address.
162	Message: Error description:	ILLEGAL DATA BEFORE REPEAT LOOP Illegal data is found immediately before the loop specified by a REPEAT instruction.
	Recovery procedure:	If an assembler directive is located before the loop, correct the directive. If a literal pool is located before the loop, use a .NOPOOL directive to stop literal pool output.
	Supplement:	When three or less instructions are to be repeated, an executable or DSP instruction must be located before the loop.
460	Message: Error description:	ILLEGAL SYMBOL A backward reference symbol, an undefined symbol, or a symbol other than label is specified as an operand of a REPEAT, or the start address is larger than (after) the end address.
460	Error description:	A backward reference symbol, an undefined symbol, or a symbol other than label is specified as an operand of a REPEAT, or the
460	Error description:	A backward reference symbol, an undefined symbol, or a symbol other than label is specified as an operand of a REPEAT, or the start address is larger than (after) the end address.
461	Error description:  Recovery procedure:  Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:  Message: Error description:	A backward reference symbol, an undefined symbol, or a symbol other than label is specified as an operand of a REPEAT, or the start address is larger than (after) the end address.  Correct the operand.  SYNTAX ERROR IN OPERAND  Illegal operand.  Correct the operand.  ILLEGAL VALUE IN OPERAND  The distance between a REPEAT and the label exceeds the allowable range.
461	Error description:  Recovery procedure:  Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:  Message:	A backward reference symbol, an undefined symbol, or a symbol other than label is specified as an operand of a REPEAT, or the start address is larger than (after) the end address.  Correct the operand.  SYNTAX ERROR IN OPERAND Illegal operand.  Correct the operand.  ILLEGAL VALUE IN OPERAND The distance between a REPEAT and the label exceeds the
461	Error description:  Recovery procedure:  Message: Error description: Recovery procedure:  Message: Error description:	A backward reference symbol, an undefined symbol, or a symbol other than label is specified as an operand of a REPEAT, or the start address is larger than (after) the end address.  Correct the operand.  SYNTAX ERROR IN OPERAND Illegal operand. Correct the operand.  ILLEGAL VALUE IN OPERAND The distance between a REPEAT and the label exceeds the allowable range. Correct the location of the REPEAT or label.  NO INSTRUCTION IN REPEAT LOOP No instruction is found in a loop, or no instruction is found at the end address.

Table 2-2 Warning Message Related to REPEAT

881 Message: ILLEGAL DIRECTIVE IN REPEAT LOOP
Error description: An illegal assembler directive is found in a loop.
Delete the directive.
Supplement: If a directive that reserves a data item or a data area, an .ALIGN directive, or an .ORG directive is used in a loop, the assembler counts the directive as one of the instructions to be repeated.